

This Page Is Inserted by IFW Operations  
and is not a part of the Official Record

## **BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images may include (but are not limited to):

- BLACK BORDERS
- TEXT CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- FADED TEXT
- ILLEGIBLE TEXT
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- COLORED PHOTOS
- BLACK OR VERY BLACK AND WHITE DARK PHOTOS
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning documents *will not* correct images,  
please do not report the images to the  
Image Problem Mailbox.**

(19)



Europäisches Patentamt  
European Patent Office  
Office européen des brevets



(11)

**EP 1 344 835 A2**

(12)

**EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION**

(43) Date of publication:  
17.09.2003 Bulletin 2003/38

(51) Int Cl.7: C12Q 1/68

(21) Application number: 03004895.3

(22) Date of filing: 06.03.2003

(84) Designated Contracting States:  
AT BE BG CH CY CZ DE DK EE ES FI FR GB GR  
HU IE IT LI LU MC NL PT RO SE SI SK TR  
Designated Extension States:  
AL LT LV MK

(30) Priority: 12.03.2002 US 96076

(71) Applicant: Enzo Life Sciences, Inc.  
Farmingdale, NY 11735-4716 (US)

(72) Inventors:  
• Rabbani, Elazar  
New York, NY 10003 (US)

• Stavrianopoulos, Jannis G.  
Bayshore, NY 11706 (US)  
• Donegan, James J.  
Long Beach, NY 11561 (US)  
• Coleman, Jack  
East Northport, NY 11731 (US)  
• Liu, Dakai  
Islip, NY 11706 (US)

(74) Representative: VOSSIUS & PARTNER  
Siebertstrasse 4  
81675 München (DE)

**(54) Real-time nucleic acid detection processes and compositions**

(57) This invention provides for compositions for use in real-time nucleic acid detection processes. Such real time nucleic acid detection processes are carried out with energy transfer elements attached to nucleic acid primers, nucleotides, nucleic acid probes or nucleic acid binding agents. Real time nucleic acid detection allows for the qualitative or quantitative detection or determination of single-stranded or doublestranded nucle-

ic acids of interest in a sample. Other processes are provided by this invention including processes for removing a portion of a homopolymeric sequence, e.g., poly A sequence or tail, from an analyte or library of analytes. Compositions useful in carrying out such removal processes are also described and provided.

## Description

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

5 [0001] This invention relates to the field of nucleic acid technology. More particularly, this invention relates to compositions, including compositions comprising nucleic acid primers or constructs and their use in nucleic acid determinations, analyses and real-time nucleic acid detection processes.

[0002] All patents, patent applications, patent publications, scientific articles and the like, cited or identified in this application are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety in order to describe more fully the state of the art to which the present invention pertains.

CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

15 [0003] This application is related to concurrently filed U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 10/096,075, filed on March 12, 2002, Rabbani et al., that application being titled "Labeling Reagents and Labeled Targets, Target Labeling Processes and Other Processes for Using Same in Nucleic Acid Determinations and Analyses." The contents of the aforementioned Serial No. 10/096,075 are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

20 [0004] For purposes of organization, this background has been divided into seven parts as follows:

- (1) Reactive Groups of Labeling Reagents
- (2) Linker Arms for Connecting Labels to Targets
- 25 (3) Porphyrin Fluorescent Dyes as Labels
- (4) Alterations in Fluorescent Properties
- (5) Fluorescent Intercalators
- (6) Chemiluminescence
- (6) Real Time Detection through Fluorescence
- 30 (7) Primer Binding Sequences in Analytes

*(1) Reactive Groups of Labeling Reagents*

35 [0005] The use of non-radioactive labels in biochemistry and molecular biology has grown exponentially in recent years. Among the various compounds used as non-radioactive labels, aromatic dyes that produce fluorescent or luminescent signal are especially useful. Notable examples of such compounds include fluorescein, rhodamine, coumarin and cyanine dyes such as Cy3 and Cy5. Composite dyes have also been synthesized by fusing two different dyes together (Lee et al., (1992) Nucl. Acids Res. 20: 2471-2488; Lee et al., U.S. Patent No. 5,945,526 and Waggoner et al., in U.S. Patent No. 6,008,373, all of which are hereby incorporated by reference).

40 [0006] Non-radioactive labeling methods were initially developed to attach signal-generating groups onto proteins. This was achieved by modifying labels with chemical groups such that they would be capable of reacting with the amine, thiol, and hydroxyl groups that are naturally present on proteins. Examples of reactive groups that were used for this purpose included activated esters such as N-hydroxysuccinimide esters, isothiocyanates and other compounds. Consequently, when it became desirable to label nucleotides and nucleic acids by non-radioactive means, methods were developed to convert nucleotides and polynucleotides into a form that made them functionally similar to proteins.

45 For instance, U.S. Patent No. 4,711,955 (incorporated by reference) disclosed the addition of amines to the 8-position of a purine, the 5-position of a pyrimidine and the 7- position of a deazapurine. The same methods that could add a label to the amine group of a protein could now be applied towards these modified nucleotides.

50 [0007] Among the compounds used as fluorescent labels, the cyanine-based dyes have become widely used since they have high extinction coefficients and narrow emission bands. Furthermore, modifications can be made in their structure that can alter the particular wavelengths where these compounds will absorb and fluoresce light. The cyanine dyes have the general structure comprising two indolenine based rings connected by a series of conjugated double bonds. The dyes are classified by the number (n) of central double bonds connecting the two ring structures; mono-carbocyanine or trimethinecarbocyanine when n=1; dicarbocyanine or pentamethinecarbocyanine when n=2; and tri-carbocyanine or heptamethinecarbocyanine when n=3. The spectral characteristics of the cyanine dyes have been observed to follow specific empirical rules. For example, each additional conjugated double bond between the rings will raise the absorption and emission maximum about 100 nm. Thus, when a compound with n=1 has a maximum absorption of approximately 550 nm, equivalent compounds with n=2 and n=3 will have maximum absorptions of 650

nm and 750 nm respectively. Addition of aromatic groups to the sides of the molecules can shift the absorption by 15 nm to a longer wavelength. The groups comprising the indolenine ring can also contribute to the absorption and emission characteristics. Using the values obtained with gem-dimethyl group as a reference point, oxygen substituted in the ring for the gem-dimethyl group decreases the absorption and emission maxima by approximately 50 nm. In contrast, substitution of sulfur increases the absorption and emission maxima by about 25 nm. R groups on the aromatic rings such as alkyl, alkyl-sulfonate and alkyl-carboxylate have little effect on the absorption and emission maxima of the cyanine dyes (U.S. Patent No. 6,110,630).

[0008] Cyanine dyes synthesized with arms containing functional groups have been prepared with iodoacetamide, isothiocyanate and succinimidyl esters that react with sulfhydryl groups on proteins (Ernst, et al., (1989), *Cytometry* 10, 3-10; Mujumdar, et al., (1989), *Cytometry* 10, 11-19; Southwick, et al., (1990) *Cytometry* 11, 4187-430). A new series of modified dyes were prepared which contained a sulfonate group on the phenyl portion of the indolenine ring. (Mujumdar et al., (1993) *Bioconjugate Chemistry* 4, 105-111 hereby incorporated by reference) that increased the water solubility of the dyes. These dyes were activated by treatment with disuccinimidyl carbonate to form succinimidyl esters that were then used to label proteins by substitution at the amine groups. Other activating groups have since been placed on the cyanine dyes. In U.S. Patent No. 5,627,027 and U.S. Patent No. 5,268,486 (incorporated by reference), cyanine dyes were prepared which comprise isothiocyanate, isocyanate, monochlorotriazine, dichlorotriazine, mono or di-halogen substituted pyridine, mono or di-halogen substituted diazine, aziridine, sulfonyl halide, acid halide, hydroxy-succinimide ester, hydroxy-sulfosuccinimide ester, imido esters, glyoxal groups and aldehydes and other groups, all of which can form a covalent bond with an amine, thiol or hydroxyl group on a target molecule.

[0009] In U.S. Patent No. 6,110,630 (incorporated by reference), cyanine dyes were prepared with a series of reactive groups derived from N-hydroxynaphthalimide. These groups included hydroxysuccinimide, para-nitrophenol, N-hydroxypthalimide and N-hydroxynaphthalimide all of which can react with nucleotides modified with primary amines. The same chemical reactions that have been described above have also been used in U.S. Patent No. 6,114,350 (incorporated by reference) but with the constituents reversed. In this disclosure, the cyanine dyes were modified with amine, sulfhydryl or hydroxyl groups and the target molecules were modified to comprise the appropriate reactive groups.

[0010] Cyanine dyes containing arms that comprise reactive functional groups have been prepared by the general scheme in which the entire heterocyclic compound comprising the two indolenine structures and the intervening unsaturated chain was synthesized first; the terminal reactive groups or any other functionality necessary to link the dyes to proteins or nucleic acids were then added after the completion of the whole dimeric dye unit.

## (2) Linker Arms for Connecting Labels to Targets

[0011] Labeled nucleotides have been used for the synthesis of DNA and RNA probes in many enzymatic methods including terminal transferase labeling, nick translation, random priming, reverse transcription, RNA transcription and primer extension. Labeled phosphoramidite versions of these nucleotides have also been used with automated synthesizers to prepare labeled oligonucleotides. The resulting labeled probes are widely used in such standard procedures as northern blotting, Southern blotting, *in situ* hybridization, RNase protection assays, DNA sequencing reactions, DNA and RNA microarray analysis and chromosome painting.

[0012] There is an extensive literature on chemical modification of nucleic acids by means of which a signal moiety is directly or indirectly attached to a nucleic acid. Primary concerns of this art have been with regard to which site in a nucleic acid is used for attachment i.e. sugar, base or phosphate analogues and whether these sites are disruptive or non-disruptive (see for instance the disclosures of U.S. Patent No. 4,711,955 and U.S. Patent No. 5,241,060; both patents incorporated by reference), the chemistry at the site of attachment that allows linkage to a reactive group or signaling moiety a spacer group usually consisting of a single aromatic group (U.S. Patent Nos. 4,952,685 and 5,013,831, both hereby incorporated by reference) or a carbon/carbon aliphatic chain to provide distance between the nucleic acid and a reactive group or signaling moiety and a reactive group at the end of the spacer such as an OH, NH, SH or some other group that can allow coupling to a signaling moiety and the nature of the signaling moiety.

[0013] Although the foregoing have all been descriptions of the various aspects that are concerned with the synthesis of modified nucleotides and polynucleotides, they have also been shown to be significant factors with regard to the properties of the resultant nucleotides and polynucleotides. Indeed, there have been numerous demonstrations that the modified nucleotides described in the present art have shortcomings compared to unmodified nucleotides.

[0014] For instance, these factors can have major impact on the ability of these modified nucleotides to be incorporated by polymerases. A consequence of this is that when using a modified base as the sole source of that particular nucleotide, there may be a loss in the amount of nucleic acid synthesis compared to a reaction with unmodified nucleotides. As a result of this, modified nucleotides are usually employed as part of a mixture of modified and unmodified versions of a given nucleotide. Although this restores synthesis to levels comparable to reactions without any modified nucleotides, a bias is often seen against the use of the modified version of the nucleotide. As such, the final proportion of modified/unmodified nucleotide may be much lower than the ratio of the reagents. Users then have a choice of either



using nucleic acids that are minimally labeled or of decreased yields. When comparable modified nucleotides are used that only comprise a linker arm attached to a base (such as allylamine dUTP) difficulties with incorporation are seldom seen. As such, the foregoing problem is likely to be due to the interactions of the label with either the polymerase or the active site where synthesis is taking place.

[0015] Difficulties in the use of polymerases can be bypassed by the use of oligonucleotide synthesizers where an ordered chemical joining of phosphoramidite derivatives of nucleotides can be used to produce labeled nucleic acids of interest. However, the presence of signal agents on modified nucleotides can even be problematic in this system. For instance, a phosphoramidite of a modified nucleotide may display a loss of coupling efficiency as the chain is extended. Although this may be problematic in itself, multiple and especially successive use of modified nucleotides in a sequence for a synthetic oligonucleotide can result in a drastic cumulative loss of product. Additionally, chemical synthesis is in itself not always an appropriate solution. There may be circumstances where labeled nucleic acids need to be of larger lengths than is practical for a synthesizer. Also, an intrinsic part of synthetic approaches is a necessity for a discrete sequence for the nucleic acid. For many purposes, a pool or library of nucleic acids would require an impractically large number of different species for synthetic approaches.

[0016] An example of a method to increase the yield of labeled oligonucleotides or polynucleotide is to use a non-interfering group such as an allylamine modified analogue during synthesis by either a polymerase or an oligonucleotide synthesizer. Labeling is then carried out post-synthetically by attachment of the desired group through the chemically reactive allylamine moieties. However, in this case, although incorporation or coupling efficiency may be restored, there may still be problems of the coupling efficiencies of attachment of the desired group to the allylamine. For instance, coupling of labels to allylamine moieties in a nucleic acid is dramatically less efficient for double-stranded DNA compared to single-stranded targets. In addition to potential yield problems, the functionality of the modification may be affected by how it is attached to a base. For instance if a hapten is attached to a base, the nature of the arm separating the hapten from the base may affect its accessibility to a potential binding partner. When a signal generating moiety is attached through a base, the nature of the arm may also affect interactions between the signal generating moiety and the nucleotide and polynucleotide.

[0017] Attempts to limit these deleterious interactions have been carried out in several ways. For instance, attachment of the arm to the base has been carried out with either a double bond alkene group (U.S. Patent No. 4,711,955) or a triple bond alkyne group (U.S. Patent No. 5,047,519) thereby inducing a directionality of the linker away from the nucleotide or polynucleotide. However, this approach is of limited utility since this rigidity is limited to only the vicinity of the attachment of the linker to the base. In addition, attempts at limiting interactions have been carried out by having the arm displace the active or signal group away from the nucleotide or polynucleotide by lengthening the spacer group. For instance, a commercially available modified nucleotide included a seven carbon aliphatic chain (Cat. No. 42724, ENZO Biochem, Inc. New York, NY) between the base and a biotin moiety used for signal generation. This product was further improved by the substitution of linkers with 11 or even 16 carbon lengths (Cat. Nos. 42722 and 42723, also available from ENZO Biochem, Inc. New York, NY). A comparison was also carried out using different length linker arms and a cyanine dye labeled nucleotide (Zhu et al., 1994 Nucl. Acid Res. 22; 3418-3422). A direct improvement in efficiency was noted as the length was increased from 10 to 17 and from 17 to 24. However, even with the longest linker, it could be seen that there was incomplete compensation for the presence of the fluorescent marker in terms of efficiency. This may be a result of the fact that due to the flexibility of the aliphatic carbon chain used for this spacer segment, the reporter groups will seldom be found in a conformation where they are completely extended away from the nucleotide itself. Thus, although this approach changed the length of the linker, it was not a change in the flexible nature of the spacer.

[0018] In an attempt to circumvent this problem, in U.S. Patent No. 5,948,648, Khan et al. have disclosed the use of multiple alkyne or aromatic groups connecting a marker to a nucleotide. However, this method employs highly non-polar groups in the linker that may induce interaction between the linker and the marker, thereby limiting its effectiveness by decreasing coupling efficiencies or by increasing non-specific binding by labeled compounds that include these groups. In addition, these groups may decrease the water solubility of either the labeled compound or various intermediates used to make the labeled compound.

[0019] The continued difficulties in using activated or labeled nucleotides which have incorporated the foregoing features demonstrates that there are still deleterious interactions occurring between the base, oligonucleotide or polynucleotide and the moiety at the end of the arm in methods of the previous art. Although the foregoing has been described with respect to attachment to nucleic acids, these problems are shared with other groups for which it may be useful to attach a marker or label.

### 55 (3) Porphyrin Fluorescent Dyes as Labels

[0020] Assays that employ fluorescently labeled probes depend upon illumination at one particular wavelength and detection of the emission at another wavelength (the Stokes shift). There exists an extensive literature on the variety

of compounds that have various excitation/emission spectral characteristics suitable for such assays. When fluorescent compounds are used for comparative expression analysis, the ability to carry out signal detection simultaneously for each label depends upon how marked is the difference between the labels. Thus, fluorophores such as Cy 3 and Cy 5 are commonly used in expression analysis since they have emission peaks at 570 and 667 respectively. One class

5 of compounds that has not been effectively exploited for this analysis are the porphyrins.  
 [0021] The ability of porphyrins to absorb light energy and efficiently release it has been used in a number of other systems. For example, light induced cleavage of nucleic acids can be carried out by a number of metallo-porphyrins that are either free in solution or attached to a sequence specific oligonucleotide (Doan et al., (1986) *Biochemistry* 26; 6736-6739). One application of this system has been the targeting and killing of cancer cells through light induced  
 10 DNA damage after absorption of metallo-porphyrins (Moan et al., (1986) *Photochemistry and Photobiology* 43; 681-690). Another example of the high energetic ability of metallo-porphyrins can be seen with their use as catalytic agents (Forgione et al., U.S. Patent No. 4,375,972) for non-enzymatic chemiluminescence. Furthermore, there are cases where porphyrins have been used as labeling reagents, for example Roelant et al in U.S. Patent No. 6,001,573 and Hendrix in U.S. Patent No. 5,464,741 (hereby incorporated by reference) where Pd octaethylporphyrins were  
 15 converted to the isothiocyanate and used as labeling reagents particularly for use in immunoassays. However, in these cases metallic porphyrins were exclusively used.

[0022] The drawback of the use of metallo-porphyrins is that the destructive abilities of these compounds are counter-productive when used in array analysis or other assay systems which require the maintenance of the integrity of the nucleic acid strands of analytes or probes. Therefore, it would be highly advantageous to be able to utilize porphyrins  
 20 for their fluorescent and chemiluminescent properties while eliminating their nucleic acid destructive properties.

#### (4) Alterations in Fluorescent Properties

[0023] In previous art, it has been shown that the addition of phenylacetylene groups to anthracene increases the  
 25 emission maxima 72 nm. (Maulding and Roberts, 1968 *J Org Chem*). Furthermore, the Stokes shift, the difference between the absorption and emission maxima, was also increased by the addition of the phenyl acetylene group to the anthracene dye. Specifically the difference of 6 nm was increased to 31 nm following the addition of two phenyl acetylene groups. When the phenyl acetylene group was added to naphthacene the difference between the absorption and emission maxima increased from 7nm to 32nm. Furthermore, the quantum yields of anthracene and naphthacene  
 30 was significantly increased by the addition of the phenyl acetylene groups to them.

[0024] The application of this effect was limited to these compounds because the chemistries and reactions used for the addition of these substituents required ketone or aldehyde groups. Also, addition of unsaturated groups to dyes has the undesired effect of potentially decreasing their solubility in aqueous solutions. In addition, the modified anthracene dyes described by Maulding and Roberts lacked any reactive groups that could be used for attachment.  
 35

#### (5) Fluorescent Intercalators

[0025] Intercalating dyes have been used for the detection and visualization of DNA in many techniques including the detection of DNA in electrophoresis gels, *in situ* hybridization, flow cytometry and real time detection of amplification.  
 40 An intercalating dye with a long history of popular usage is ethidium bromide. Ethidium bromide has the useful properties of high affinity for nucleic acids and an increased fluorescence after binding. This enhancement of fluorescence takes place with both single-stranded and double-stranded nucleic acids with the double-stranded DNA showing a much more marked effect, generally around thirty-fold. Other dyes which exhibit increased fluorescence signal upon binding to nucleic acid have been developed in recent years including such compounds as acridine orange, SYBR Green and  
 45 Picogreen. There is continually a need, however, for increased signal generation after the binding or intercalation with nucleic acids especially for the use in techniques, such as real time amplification.

#### (6) Chemiluminescence

[0026] The use of chemiluminescent reagents for signal detection has gained wider use in recent years. There are several different classes of compounds that can produce luminescent signals including 1,2-dioxetanes and luminols.  
 50 1,2-Dioxetanes are four-membered rings which contain two adjacent oxygens. Some forms of these compounds are very unstable and emit light as they decompose. On the other hand, the presence of an adamantyl group can lead to a highly stable form with a half-life of several years (Wieringa et al. (1972) *Tetrahedron Letters* 169-172 incorporated by reference). Use can be made of this property by using a stable form of a 1,2-dioxetane as a substrate in an enzyme  
 55 linked assay where the presence of the enzyme will transform the substrate into an unstable form thereby using chemiluminescence for signal generation. Enzymatic induction of a chemiluminescent signal has been described where an adamantyl dioxetane derivative was synthesized with an additional group that was a substrate for enzymatic cleavage

(U.S. Patent No. 5,707,559, Schaap et al. (1987) Tetrahedron Letters, 28, 935-938; Schaap et al. (1987) Tetrahedron Letters, 28, 1159-1163, all of which are incorporated by reference). In the presence of the appropriate enzyme, cleavage would take place and an unstable compound would be formed that emitted light as it decomposes.

[0027] A common design of dioxetane derivatives for this method is attachment of an aryl group that has hydroxyl substituents which contain protecting groups. The removal of the protecting group by the appropriate enzyme results in a negatively charged oxygen. This intermediate is unstable and leads to the decomposition of the compound and the emission of light. Various 1,2-dioxetane derivatives have been developed that can be activated by different enzymes depending upon the nature of the protecting group. Enzymes that have been described as potentially useful for this purpose have included alkaline phosphatase, galactosidase, glucosidase, esterase, trypsin, lipase, and phospholipase among others (for instance, see U.S. Patent No. 4,978,614, incorporated herein by reference).

[0028] Variations of this basic method have also been disclosed. For example, Urdea has disclosed (U.S. Patent No. 5,132,204, incorporated by reference) stable 1,2-dioxetanes derivatives which require the activity of two enzymes in order to produce a signal. Haces has disclosed a method where the decomposition of the 1,2-dioxetane is triggered by an enzymatic or chemical reaction which releases a terminal nucleophile (U.S. Patent No. 5,248,618 incorporated by reference). This can now undergo an intramolecular substitution reaction, thereby liberating a phenoxy group which triggers the decomposition of the 1,2-dioxetane. The chain where the intramolecular reaction takes place is made up of single bonds thus allowing complete rotational freedom around all the bonds and relying on a random interaction between the groups participating in the intramolecular reaction.

[0029] Despite improvements within the field of chemiluminescent signaling there still exists the need for new substrates and reagents. Many of the substrates that are currently available produce a high level of background due to enzyme independent triggering of the decomposition of the substrate and release of chemiluminescent signal. Therefore, a new type of 1,2-dioxetane which is more stable in the absence of an enzyme would be a desirable reagent.

#### (7) Real Time Detection through Fluorescence

[0030] Amplification of nucleic acids from clinical samples has become a widely used technique. The first methodology for this process, the Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR), was described by Mullis et al. in U.S. Patent No. 4,683,202 hereby incorporated by reference. Since that time, other methodologies such as Ligation Chain Reaction (LCR) (U.S. Patent No. 5,494,810), GAP-LCR (U.S. Patent No. 6,004,286), Nucleic Acid Sequence Based Amplification (NASBA) (U.S. Patent No. 5,130,238), Strand Displacement Amplification (SDA) (U.S. Patent No. 5,270,184 and U.S. Patent No. 5,455,166) and Loop Mediated Amplification (U.S. Patent Application 09/104,067; European Patent Application Publication No. EP 0 971 039 A) have been described, all of which are incorporated by reference. Detection of an amplified product derived from the appropriate target has been carried out in number of ways. In the initial method described by Mullis et al., gel analysis was used to detect the presence of a discrete nucleic acid species. Identification of this species as being indicative of the presence of the intended target was determined by size assessment and the use of negative controls lacking the target sequence. The placement of the primers used for amplification dictated a specific size for the product from appropriate target sequence. Spurious amplification products made from non-target sequences were unlikely to have the same size product as the target derived sequence. Alternatively, more elaborate methods have been used to examine the particular nature of the sequences that are present in the amplification product. For instance, restriction enzyme digestion has been used to determine the presence, absence or spatial location of specific sequences. The presence of the appropriate sequences has also been established by hybridization experiments. In this method, the amplification product can be used as either the target or as a probe.

[0031] The foregoing detection methods have historically been used after the amplification reaction was completed. More recently, methods have been described for measuring the extent of synthesis during the course of amplification, i.e. "real-time" detection. For instance, in the simplest system, an intercalating agent is present during the amplification reaction (Higuchi in U.S. Patent No. 5,994,056 and Wittwer et al., U.S. Patent No. 6,174,670; both of which are hereby incorporated by reference). This method takes advantage of an enhancement of fluorescence exhibited by the binding of an intercalator to double-stranded nucleic acids. Measurement of the amount of fluorescence can take place post-synthetically in a fluorometer after the reaction is over, or real time measurements can be carried out during the course of the reaction by using a special PCR cycler machine that is equipped with a fluorescence detection system and uses capillary tubes for the reactions (U.S. Patent No. 5,455,175 and U.S. Patent No. 6,174,670 hereby incorporated by reference). As the amount of double-stranded material rises during the course of amplification, the amount of signal also increases. The sensitivity of this system depends upon a sufficient amount of double-stranded nucleic acid being produced that generates a signal that is distinguishable from the fluorescence of a) unbound intercalator and b) intercalator molecules bound to single-stranded primers in the reaction mix. Specificity is derived from the nature of the amplification reaction itself or by looking at a Tm profile of the reaction products. Although the initial work was done with Ethidium Bromide, SYBR Green™ is more commonly used at the present time. A variation of this system has been described by Singer and Haugland in U.S. Patent No. 6,323,337 B1 (incorporated by reference), where the

primers used in PCR reactions were modified with quenchers thereby reducing signal generation of a fluorescent intercalator that was bound to a primer dimer molecule. Signal generation from target derived amplicons could still take place since amplicons derived from target sequences comprised intercalators bound to segments that were sufficiently distant from the quenchers.

5 [0032] Another method of analysis that depends upon incorporation has been described by Nazarenko (U.S. Patent No. 5,866,336; incorporated by reference). In this system, signal generation is dependent upon the incorporation of primers into double-stranded amplification products. The primers are designed such that they have extra sequences added onto their 5' ends. In the absence of amplification, stem-loop structures are formed through intramolecular hybridization that consequently bring a quencher into proximity with an energy donor thereby preventing fluorescence. 10 However, when a primer becomes incorporated into double-stranded amplicons, the quencher and donor become physically separated and the donor is now able to produce a fluorescent signal. The specificity of this system depends upon the specificity of the amplification reaction itself. Since the stem-loop sequences are derived from extra sequences, the T<sub>m</sub> profile of signal generation is the same whether the amplicons were derived from the appropriate target molecules or from non-target sequences.

15 [0033] In addition to incorporation based assays, probe based systems have also been used for real-time analysis. For instance, a dual probe system can be used in a homogeneous assay to detect the presence of appropriate target sequences. In this method, one probe comprises an energy donor and the other probe comprises an energy acceptor (European Patent Application Publication No. 0 070 685 by Michael Heller, published Jan 26, 1983). Thus, when the target sequence is present, the two probes can bind to adjacent sequences and allow energy transfer to take place. 20 In the absence of target sequences, the probes remain unbound and no energy transfer takes place. Even if by chance, there are non-target sequences in a sample that are sufficiently homologous that binding of one or both probes takes place, no signal is generated since energy transfer would require that both probes bind and that they be in a particular proximity to each other. Advantage of this system has been taken by Wittwer et al., in U.S. Patent No. 6,174,670 (incorporated by reference) for real time detection of PCR amplification using the capillary tube equipped PCR machine described previously. The primer annealing step during each individual cycle can also allow the simultaneous binding of each probe to target sequences providing an assessment of the presence and amount of the target sequences. In a further refinement of this method, one of the primers comprises an energy transfer element and a single energy transfer probe is used. Labeled probes have also been used in conjunction with fluorescent intercalators to allow the specificity of the probe methodology to be combined with the enhancement of fluorescence derived from binding to 30 nucleic acids. This was first described in U.S. Patent No. 4,868,103 and later applied to amplification reactions in PCT Int. Appl. WO 99/28500 (both documents incorporated by reference).

[0034] Probes have also been used that comprise an energy donor and an energy acceptor in the same nucleic acid. In these assays, the energy acceptor "quenches" fluorescent energy emission in the absence of appropriate complementary targets. In one system described by Lizardi et al. in U.S. Patent No. 5,118,801, "molecular beacons" are used 35 where the energy donor and the quencher are kept in proximity by secondary structures with internal base pairing. When the target sequences are present, complementary sequences in the Molecular Beacons allow hybridization events that destroy this secondary structure thereby allowing energy emission. In another system that has been termed Taqman, use is made of the double-stranded selectivity of the exonuclease activity of Taq polymerase (Gelfand et al., U.S. Patent No. 5,210,015). When target molecules are present, hybridization of the probe to complementary sequences converts the single-stranded probe into a substrate for the exonuclease. Degradation of the probe separates the 40 donor from the quencher thereby releasing light.

#### **(8) Primer Binding Sequences in Analytes**

45 [0035] One of the characteristics of eucaryotic mRNA is the presence of poly A tails at their 3' ends. This particular feature has provided a major advantage in working with mRNA since the poly A segment can be used as a universal primer binding site for synthesis of cDNA copies of any eucaryotic mRNA. However, this has also led to a certain bias in RNA studies, since the 3' ends of mRNA are easily obtained and thoroughly studied but the 5' ends lack such consensus sequences. Thus, a large number of systems have been described whose major purpose has been to 50 generate clones that have complete representation of the original 5' end sequences. This has also been carried over in array analysis for comparative transcription studies. Since substantially all systems used for this purpose are initiated by oligo T priming at the 3' end of mRNA, sequences downstream are dependent upon the continuation of synthesis away from the 3' starting point. However, it is well known that there is an attenuation effect of polymerization as polymerases frequently fall off of templates after synthesis of a particular number of bases. Another effect is generated by the presence of RNase H that is a component of most reverse transcriptases. Paused DNA strands may allow digestion 55 of the RNA near the 3' end of the DNA thereby separating the uncopied portion of the RNA template from the growing DNA strand. This effect may also occur randomly during the course of cDNA synthesis. As such, representation of sequences is inversely proportional to their distance from the 3' poly A primer site.

[0036] Although prior art has capitalized extensively on poly A segments of RNA, it should be recognized that poly A mRNA represents only a portion of nucleic acids in biological systems. Another constraint in prior art is that the use of poly A tails is only available in eucaryotic mRNA. Two areas of especial interest are unable to enjoy this benefit. One area is bacterial mRNA since they intrinsically lack poly A additions. The second area is heterologous RNA in eucaryotic systems. For any particular eucaryotic gene, there is a considerable amount of genetic information that is present in heterologous RNA that is lost by the use of polyadenylated mature forms of transcripts that comprise only exon information.

exon information.

[0037] The lack of primer consensus sequence in these systems has necessitated the use of alternatives to oligo T priming. In prior art, bacterial expression studies have been carried out by random priming with octamers (Sellinger et al., 2000 Nature Biotechnology 18; 1262-1268), a selected set of 37 7-mers and 8-mers (Talaat et al., 2000 Nature Biotechnology 18; 679-682) and a set of 4,290 gene specific primers (Tao et al., 1999 J. Bact. 181; 6425-6490). The use of large sets of primers as represented by random primers and set of gene specific primers requires high amounts of primers to drive the reaction and should exhibit poor kinetics due to the sequence complexity of the primers and targets. I.e. for any given sequence in an analyte, there is only a very minute portion of the primers that are complementary to that sequence. Large sets of random primers also have the capacity to use each other as primers and templates thereby generating nonsense nucleic acids and decreasing the effective amounts of primers available. Attempts to improve the kinetics of priming by increasing the amounts of random oligonucleotides is very limited. First off, there are physical constraints in the amount of oligonucleotides that are soluble in a reaction mixture. Secondly, increases in the amount of primers is self-limiting since increased primer concentrations results in increased self-priming, thereby generating more nonsense sequences and absorption of reagents that would otherwise be used for analyte dependent synthesis. Lower concentrations can theoretically be used by decreasing the complexity (i.e. sequence length) of the primers, but restraints are then imposed upon the stability of hybrid formation. On the other hand, the discrete sub-set of 7-mers and 8-mers described above requires knowledge of the complete genome of the intended target organism. As such, these will only be used with completely sequenced organisms, and a unique set has to be individually developed for each target organism thus limiting its application. Consensus sequences can be enzymatically added by RNA ligation or poly A polymerase but both of these are slow inefficient processes. Thus there exists a need for methods and compositions that can efficiently provide stable priming of a large number of non-polyadenylated templates of variable or even unknown sequence while maintaining a low level of complexity.

0038] Methods have also been described for the introduction of sequences into analytes for the purpose of amplification. For instance, oligonucleotides have also been described that comprise a segment complementary to a target sequence and a segment comprising a promoter sequence where the target is either a selected discrete sequence or a natural poly A sequence (U.S. Patent No. 5,554,516 and U.S. Patent No. 6,338,954 (both patents incorporated by reference)). After hybridization to a target mRNA, RNase H is used to cleave a segment of the analyte hybridized to the complementary segment and then extend the 3' end of the analyte using the promoter segment as a template. Since the oligonucleotide that is used for these methods has a homogeneous nature, this particular method relies upon the extension reaction being initiated before the endonuclease reaction completes digestion of the complementary segment of the analyte.

## SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

[0039] The present invention provides a composition of matter comprising at least two parts, a first part comprising at least one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises (i) at least one first energy transfer element; and (ii) nucleic acid sequences which are complementary to sequences in at least a portion of a nucleic acid of interest; a second part comprising at least one second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises: (i) at least one second energy transfer element; and (ii) nucleic acid sequences which are identical to nucleic acid sequences in at least a portion of the nucleic acid of interest; wherein the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct does not comprise the second energy transfer element, and wherein the second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct does not comprise the first energy transfer element.

does not comprise the first energy transfer element.

[0040] The present invention also provides a composition of matter comprising at least two parts, a first part comprising at least two segments, wherein the first segment comprises a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and at least one first energy transfer element, and the second segment comprises primer-extended complementary to at least a portion of a nucleic acid of interest; and a second part comprising at least two segments, wherein the first segment of the second part comprises a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and at least one second energy transfer element; and wherein the second segment of the second part comprises a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence which is identical to at least a portion of the nucleic acid of interest; wherein the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct does not comprise the second energy transfer element, and wherein the second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct does not comprise the first nucleic acid energy element.

The present invention is a composition of matter comprising two nucleic acid strands, wherein

[0041] Also provided by the present invention is a composition of matter comprising two nucleic acid strands, wherein

the first of the two strands comprises at least one first energy transfer element, and the second of the two strands comprises at least one second energy transfer element and wherein the first strand or a portion thereof is hybridized to the second strand or a portion thereof, and wherein the first strand lacks the second energy transfer element and the second strand lacks the first energy transfer element.

5 [0042] Further provided by this invention is a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample using the first-described composition above. The process comprises the steps of: (a) providing (i) the composition described above; (ii) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; and (iii) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii) and (iii) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the first nucleic acid primer in the composition (i) with one strand of the nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions 10 the second nucleic acid primer in the composition (i) with the complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest if present; (d) extending the first nucleic acid primer and the second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is present; (e) separating the first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from the nucleic acid of interest and separating the 15 second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from the complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest if present; (f) contacting under hybridization conditions the first nucleic acid primer in the composition (i) with the nucleic acid of interest or the second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (e), and contacting under hybridization conditions the second nucleic acid primer in the composition (i) with the first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (e); and (g) detecting by means of the first and second energy transfer elements in the composition (i) the presence 20 or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest.

[0043] The invention described herein also provides a composition of matter that comprises a nucleic acid strand, the strand comprising two segments, the first segment comprising a primer or a nucleic acid construct; and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, wherein the primer or nucleic acid construct comprises a first energy transfer element, and wherein the primer-extended sequence comprises a second energy transfer element, and where- 25 in the primer-extended sequence comprises more than one nucleotide.

[0044] Also provided is a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample. The process comprises the steps of: (a) providing (i) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; (ii) a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises: (A) a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of the nucleic acid of interest and (B) a first energy 30 transfer element; (iii) labeled nucleotide or nucleotides comprising a second energy transfer element; and (iv) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the nucleic acid primer in the composition (ii) with the nucleic acid of interest; (d) extending the nucleic acid primer by more than one nucleotide, thereby incorporating the labeled nucleotide or nucleotides; and (e) detecting the presence or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer 35 between the first energy transfer element in the nucleic acid primer and the second energy transfer element in an incorporated nucleotide.

[0045] Another aspect provided by the present invention is a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample. The process comprises the steps of: (a) providing (i) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of the nucleic acid of interest; (iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence 40 identical to at least a portion of the one strand; (iv) labeled nucleotide or nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element; and (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension; wherein (ii), (iii) or both (ii) and (iii) comprise a second energy transfer element; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the first nucleic acid primer in the composition (ii) with one strand of the nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions the second nucleic acid primer in the composition (iii) with the complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest if present; (d) extending the first nucleic acid primer and the second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid 45 sequence if the complementary strand is present, thereby incorporating the labeled nucleotide or nucleotides; (e) separating the first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from the nucleic acid of interest and separating the second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from the complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest if present; (f) contacting under hybridization conditions the first nucleic acid primer in the composition (ii) with the nucleic acid of interest or the second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (e), and contacting under hybridization conditions the second nucleic acid primer in the composition (iii) with the first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from 50 step (e); and (g) detecting the presence or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between a second energy transfer element in the first nucleic acid primer, the second nucleic acid primer, or both, and a first energy element in an incorporated nucleotide.

[0046] Another aspect of the invention is a composition of matter that comprises a nucleic acid strand, the strand



comprising two segments, the first segment comprising a primer or a nucleic acid construct; and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, wherein the primer-extended sequence comprises one or more first energy transfer elements and one or more second energy transfer elements.

5 [0047] The present invention also provides a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, the process comprising the steps of: (a) providing (i) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; (ii) a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of the nucleic acid of interest and (iii) one or more first nucleotides, the first nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element, and one or more second nucleotides, the second nucleotides comprising a second energy transfer element; (iv) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the nucleic acid primer in the composition (ii) with the nucleic acid of interest; (d) extending the nucleic acid primer, thereby incorporating the first and second nucleotides; and (e) detecting the presence or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between the first energy transfer element and the second energy transfer element.

15 [0048] Also provided is a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample. The process comprises the steps of: (a) providing (i) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of the nucleic acid of interest; (iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical to at least a portion of the one strand; (iv) one or more first nucleotides, the first nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element, and one or more second nucleotides, the second nucleotides comprising a second energy transfer element; and (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the first nucleic acid primer in the composition (ii) with one strand of the nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions the second nucleic acid primer in the composition (iii) with the complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest if present; (d) extending the first nucleic acid primer and the second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is present, thereby incorporating the first and second nucleotides; and (e) detecting the presence or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between the first energy transfer element and the second energy transfer element.

30 [0049] This invention also concerns a composition of matter that comprises a nucleic acid strand, the strand comprising two or more ribonucleotides, wherein at least one ribonucleotide comprises a first energy transfer element and wherein at least one other ribonucleotide comprises a second energy transfer element.

35 [0050] The invention also provides a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, the process comprising the steps of: (a) providing (i) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; (ii) at least one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and optionally, a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, wherein either the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or the optional second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises an RNA promoter sequence; (iii) one or more first ribonucleotides, the first ribonucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element, and one or more second ribonucleotides, the second ribonucleotides comprising a second energy transfer element; (iv) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension and RNA transcription; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii) and (iii) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of the nucleic acid of interest; (d) extending the nucleic acid primer to form a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence; (e) synthesizing a second nucleic acid strand complementary to the primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or a portion thereof, thereby forming a double-stranded nucleic acid; (f) transcribing the double-stranded nucleic acid formed in step (e) to incorporate the first and second ribonucleotides (iii) into transcripts; (g) detecting the presence or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between the first energy transfer element and the second energy transfer element; wherein the transcribing step (f) is carried out by the RNA promoter sequence in either the primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or the second nucleic acid strand synthesized in step (e).

50 [0051] Also provided is a composition of matter that comprises two parts, wherein the first part is a nucleic acid strand comprising two segments, the first segment comprising a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, and the second segment comprises a primer-extended sequence, and wherein the second part comprises a nucleic acid binding agent, wherein the nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises one or more fluorescent first energy transfer elements and wherein the nucleic acid binding agent comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

55 [0052] Also provided is a composition of matter that comprises (a) two nucleic acid strands, wherein at least one of the strands comprises two segments, the first segment comprising a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, and (b) a nucleic acid binding agent, wherein the nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises one or more fluorescent first energy transfer elements and wherein

the nucleic acid binding agent comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

[0053] Another aspect of the present invention is a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, the process comprising the steps of: (a) providing (i) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; (ii) a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises (A) a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of the nucleic acid of interest; and (B) one or more fluorescent first energy transfer elements; (iii) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more second energy transfer elements; (iv) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the nucleic acid primer in the composition (ii) with the nucleic acid of interest; (d) extending the nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct to form a primer-extended sequence; (e) binding the nucleic acid binding agent (iii) to the primer-extended sequence or to a complex comprising the nucleic acid of interest and the primer-extended sequence; and (f) detecting the presence or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between the first energy transfer element and the second energy transfer element.

[0054] Also provided is a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, the process comprising the steps of: (a) providing (i) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of the nucleic acid of interest; (iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical to at least a portion of the one strand; (iv) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more first energy transfer elements; and (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension; wherein (ii), (iii) or both (ii) and (iii) comprise one or more fluorescent second energy transfer elements; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the first nucleic acid primer in the composition (ii) with one strand of the nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions the second nucleic acid primer in the composition (iii) with the complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest if present; (d) extending the first nucleic acid primer and the second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is present; (e) binding the nucleic acid binding agent (iv) to a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or to a complex comprising the nucleic acid of interest and a primer-extended sequence; and (f) detecting the presence or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between a second energy transfer element in the first nucleic acid primer, the second nucleic acid primer, or both, and a first energy element in the nucleic acid binding agent (iv).

[0055] Additionally, there is provided by the present invention a composition of matter that comprises (a) a nucleic acid strand comprising two segments, the first segment comprising a primer or a nucleic acid construct; and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence; and (b) a nucleic acid binding agent; wherein the primer-extended sequence comprises one or more first energy transfer elements, and wherein the nucleic acid binding agent comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

[0056] Also provided is a composition of matter that comprises (a) two nucleic acid strands, wherein at least one of the strands comprises two segments, the first segment comprising a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, and (b) a nucleic acid binding agent, wherein the primer-extended sequence comprises one or more first energy transfer elements, and wherein the nucleic acid binding agent comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

[0057] This invention also provides a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, the process comprising the steps of: (a) providing (i) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; (ii) at least one nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct complementary to at least a portion of the nucleic acid of interest; (iii) labeled nucleotide or nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element; (iv) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more second energy transfer elements; and (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the nucleic acid primer in the composition (ii) with the nucleic acid of interest; (d) extending the nucleic acid primer, thereby incorporating the labeled nucleotide or nucleotides; (e) binding the nucleic acid binding agent to the primer-extended sequence; and (f) detecting the presence or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between the first energy transfer element and the second energy transfer element.

[0058] Also provided is a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, the process comprising the steps of: (a) providing: (i) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of the nucleic acid of interest; (iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical to at least a portion of the one strand; (iv) one or more labeled nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element; (v) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more second energy transfer elements; and (vi) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand



extension; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v) and (vi) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of the nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions the second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (iii) with the complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest if present; (d) extending the first nucleic acid primer and the second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is present, thereby incorporating the labeled nucleotide or nucleotides; (e) binding the nucleic acid binding agent (v) to the first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, and to the second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is present; and (f) detecting the presence or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between the first energy transfer element and the second energy transfer element.

[0059] Additionally provided by this invention is a composition of matter that comprises: (i) a nucleic acid strand, the strand comprising one or more ribonucleotides, wherein at least one ribonucleotide comprises a first energy transfer element; and (ii) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more second energy transfer elements.

[0060] Another aspect of this invention is a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, the process comprising the steps of: (a) providing (i) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; (ii) at least one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and optionally, a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, wherein either the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or the optional second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises an RNA promoter sequence; (iii) one or more labeled ribonucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element; (iv) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising a second energy transfer element; (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension and RNA transcription; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of the nucleic acid of interest; (d) extending the nucleic acid primer to form a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence; (e) synthesizing a second nucleic acid strand complementary to the primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or a portion thereof, thereby forming a double-stranded nucleic acid; (f) transcribing the double-stranded nucleic acid formed in step (e) to incorporate the labeled ribonucleotides (iii) into labeled transcripts; (g) binding the nucleic acid binding agent (iv) to the labeled transcripts; (h) detecting the presence or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between the first energy transfer element and the second energy transfer element; wherein the transcribing step (f) is carried out by an RNA promoter in either the primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or the second nucleic acid strand synthesized in step (e).

[0061] This invention also provides a composition of matter that comprises a hybridized first and second nucleic acids, the first strand comprising two segments, the first segment comprising a primer or a nucleic acid construct; and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, the second strand comprising a nucleic acid probe hybridized to the primer-extended sequence or a portion thereof, and wherein the primer-extended sequence comprises one or more first energy transfer elements, and wherein the nucleic acid probe comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

[0062] This invention additionally provides a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, the process comprising the steps of: (a) providing (i) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; (ii) a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct complementary to at least a portion of the nucleic acid of interest; (iii) labeled nucleotide or nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element; (iv) a nucleic acid probe comprising one or more second energy transfer elements; and (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the nucleic acid primer in the composition (ii) with the nucleic acid of interest; (d) extending the nucleic acid primer, thereby incorporating the labeled nucleotide or nucleotides; (e) separating the primer-extended sequence from the nucleic acid of interest (i); (f) hybridizing the nucleic acid probe to the primer-extended sequence; and (g) detecting the presence or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between the first energy transfer element and the second energy transfer element.

[0063] Also provided by this invention is a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, the process comprising the steps of: (a) providing: (i) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of the nucleic acid of interest; (iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical to at least a portion of the one strand; (iv) one or more labeled nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element; (v) a nucleic acid probe comprising one or more second energy transfer elements; and (vi) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v) and (vi) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of the nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions the second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (iii) with the complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest if present; (d) extending the first nucleic acid primer and the

second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is present, thereby incorporating the labeled nucleotide or nucleotides; (e) separating the first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and the second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if produced in step (d); (f) hybridizing the nucleic acid probe (v) to the first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, or to the second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence; and (g) detecting the presence or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between the first energy transfer element and the second energy transfer element.

[0064] Also provided is a composition of matter that comprises a hybridized first and second nucleic acids, the first strand comprising at least one ribonucleotide, wherein the at least one ribonucleotide comprises a first energy transfer element; the second strand comprising: a nucleic acid probe hybridized to the first strand or a portion thereof, wherein the nucleic acid probe comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

[0065] Another aspect of this invention is a process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, the process comprising the steps of: (a) providing (i) a sample suspected of containing the nucleic acid of interest; (ii) at least one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and optionally, a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, wherein either the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or the optional second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises an RNA promoter sequence; (iii) one or more labeled ribonucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element; (iv) a nucleic acid binding probe comprising a second energy transfer element; (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension and RNA transcription; (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above; (c) contacting under hybridization conditions the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of the nucleic acid of interest; (d) extending the nucleic acid primer to form a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or a portion thereof, thereby forming a double-stranded nucleic acid; (f) transcribing the double-stranded nucleic acid formed in step (e) to incorporate the labeled ribonucleotides (iii) into labeled transcripts; (g) hybridizing the nucleic acid probe (iv) to the labeled transcripts; (h) detecting the presence or quantity of the nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between the first energy transfer element and the second energy transfer element; wherein the transcribing step (f) is carried out by an RNA promoter in either the primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or the second nucleic acid strand synthesized in step (e).

[0066] Additionally, this invention provides a chimeric nucleic acid construct comprising at least two segments, the first segment comprising five or more universal bases and the second segment comprising a template for synthesizing a discrete nucleic acid sequence.

[0067] Further provided by this invention is a process for incorporating a desirable nucleic acid sequence into an analyte or a library of analytes, the process comprising the steps of: a) providing (i) the analyte or library of analytes; (ii) a chimeric nucleic acid construct comprising at least two segments, the first segment comprising eight or more universal bases and the second segment comprising a template for synthesizing the desirable nucleic acid sequence; and (iii) reagents for carrying out hybridization and template-dependent strand extension; b) binding or hybridizing the chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) to the analyte or library of analytes (i); and c) extending the 3' end of the analyte or library of analytes; wherein the second segment is a template for the extending step (c) when the second segment is in proximity to the 3' end of the analyte or library of analytes.

[0068] Also provided is a composition comprising a set of chimeric nucleic acid constructs, each such construct comprising at least three segments, the first segment comprising four or more universal bases, the second segment comprising permutations of from one to eight nucleotides, the third segment comprising a template for synthesizing a desirable nucleic acid sequence, wherein in the second segment, the permutations of from one to eight nucleotides comprise

45

 $(N)_n$ 

wherein N independently comprises G, A, T or C, and wherein n is an integer from one to eight.

[0069] The present invention also provides a process for incorporating a desirable nucleic acid sequence into an analyte or a library of analytes, the process comprising the steps of: a) providing (i) the analyte or library of analytes; (ii) a set of chimeric nucleic acid constructs, each such construct comprising at least three segments, the first segment comprising four or more universal bases, the second segment comprising permutations of from one to eight nucleotides, the third segment comprising a template for synthesizing the desirable nucleic acid sequence, wherein in the second segment, the permutations of from one to eight nucleotides comprise

55

 $(N)_n$

wherein N independently comprises G, A, T or C, and wherein n is an integer from one to eight; and (iii) reagents for carrying out hybridization and template-dependent strand extension; b) binding or hybridizing the chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) to the analyte or library of analytes (i); and c) extending the 3' end of the analyte or library of analytes wherein the third segment is a template for the extending step (c) when the second segment is hybridized to the 3' end of the analyte or library of analytes. between the chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) and the analyte or library of analytes (i).

[0070] This invention also concerns a chimeric nucleic acid construct that comprises at least two segments, a first segment comprising four or more universal bases; and a second segment which is complementary to a discrete nucleic acid sequence of interest; wherein the 5' end of the first segment is attached to the 3' end of the second segment, and the 5' end of the second segment is attached to the 3' end of the third segment.

[0071] Related to the last-described composition is a process for cleaving an analyte or a library of analytes at selected sites or sequences. Provided by this invention, the process comprising the steps of: (a) providing: (i) the analyte or library of analytes; (ii) the composition last-described; (iii) a specific endonuclease; (iv) reagents for hybridization and endonucleolytic digestion; (b) hybridizing the composition (ii) with the analyte or library of analytes (i) to form hybrids between the second segment and the selected sites or sequences in the analyte or library of analyte (i); and (c) cleaving endonucleolytically the hybrids.

[0072] Also provided is a process for incorporating a desirable nucleic acid sequence into an analyte or a library of analytes, the process comprising the steps of: (a) providing: (i) the analyte or library of analytes; (ii) a chimeric nucleic acid construct comprising at least two segments, wherein the first of the two segments is complementary to a first nucleic acid sequence and wherein the second of the two segments is complementary to a second analyte nucleic acid sequence; (iii) reagents for hybridization and endonucleolytic digestion; (iv) an endonuclease; and (v) reagents for strand extension; (b) forming a mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv); (c) hybridizing the chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) with the analyte or library of analytes (i), thereby forming a first complex between the first segment and the first analyte nucleic acid sequence, and a second complex between the second segment and the second analyte nucleic acid sequence; wherein the first complex is resistant to digestion by the endonuclease, and wherein the second complex comprises one or more sites sensitive to endonucleolytic digestion; (d) digesting the second complex with the endonuclease (iv); and (e) extending the 3'-end of the second analyte nucleic acid sequence, the 3'-end having been generated by the endonuclease (iv), wherein the extending step (e) is carried out by template dependent polymerization or ligation.

[0073] The present invention additionally provides a chimeric nucleic acid construct that comprises at least two nucleic acid segments, wherein the first segment and the second segment each comprise sequences complementary to different portions of a homopolymeric sequence in a nucleic acid of interest, wherein hybridization of the first segment to a first portion of the homopolymeric sequence produces a first complex; wherein hybridization of the second segment to a second portion of the homopolymeric sequence produces a second complex; and wherein the second portion of the homopolymeric sequence in the second complex is a substrate for a specific endonuclease, and wherein the first complex is resistant to the specific endonuclease.

[0074] A further aspect is a process for removing a portion of a homopolymeric sequence from an analyte or library of analytes, the process comprising: (a) providing: (i) the analyte or library of analytes; (ii) the just-described construct; (iii) an endonuclease; (iv) reagents for hybridization and endonucleolytic digestion; (b) hybridizing the construct (ii) with the analyte or library of analytes (i) to form at least one second complex comprising the second segment in the construct (ii) hybridized to the portion of the homopolymeric sequence, and at least one first complex comprising the first segment in the construct (ii) hybridized to a different portion of the homopolymeric sequence; (c) removing endonucleolytically the portion of the homopolymeric sequence hybridized to the second segment in the second complex or complexes.

[0075] Numerous other aspects and embodiments of the present invention are described in further detail below.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

[0076]

FIGURE 1 illustrates several examples of linker arms made with rigid polar units.  
FIGURE 2 shows structures of various homodimers of Ethidium Bromide: A) meta-EthD B) EthD-1 and C) EthD-2.  
FIGURE 3 illustrates the use of primers with first and second energy transfer elements.

double stranded nucleic acid made from extension of two primers  
double stranded SDA amplicon  
Nested PCR  
Ligase Chain Reaction.

FIGURE 4 depicts variations of placement of primers in a double stranded nucleic acid.  
 FIGURE 5 is an illustration of the use of nucleotides with energy transfer elements.

FIGURE 6 shows the use of matrix with energy transfer elements.  
 FIGURE 7 is the spectrum of a phenyl analog of TAMRA.

FIGURE 8 is the spectrum of a phenyl analog of Texas Red.

FIGURE 9 is an outline of method for synthesizing a homodimer.

FIGURE 10 depicts the results of illuminating *meta*-EtBr at 493 nm in the presence and absence of DNA.

FIGURE 11 shows the results of illuminating *meta*-EtBr at 350 nm in the presence and absence of DNA.

FIGURE 12 shows the sequence of an HIV antisense amplicon and sequences of two primers and one probe used

in the examples below to illustrate the novel use of energy transfer in the present invention.

FIGURE 13 shows the use of a CNAC to eliminate a portion of a poly A tail followed by incorporation of an oligo C primer binding sequence.

FIGURE 14 shows various steps for the synthesis of a dioxetane derivative.

FIGURE 15 shows the enzymatic production of an unstable light emitting form of a dioxetane.

## DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

[0077] The present invention discloses novel methods and compositions for the preparation of compounds labeled with ligands and dyes. Included within the present disclosure are novel labeling reagents, novel dyes and novel methods that can be used to synthesize the novel reagents of the present invention. The novel methods of the present invention may also be applied to the synthesis of compounds that have been described previously.

### 1. Labeling Reagents Which Participate in Carbon-Carbon Bond Formation

[0078] One aspect of the present invention discloses novel labeling reagents that comprise a reactive group capable of creating a carbon-carbon bond between a marker or label and a desirable target molecule. This is in contrast to labeling reagents described in prior art which employed protein derived chemistries involving formation of a bond between an amine, sulfhydryl or hydroxyl group and an appropriate reactive group. The novel labeling reagent of the present invention should provide a highly efficient means of attaching signal moieties to desirable target molecules. Thus, the novel labeling reagents of the present invention comprise a ligand or dye portion and a reactive group capable of creating a carbon-carbon bond. In addition, it may be desirable to insert a linker arm that separates the ligand or dye portion from the reactive group. This may provide more efficient coupling between the novel labeling reagent and an intended target molecule. The presence and nature of the linker arm may also increase the biological or chemical activity of the labeled target molecule. The novel reagents of the present invention can be used to label any target molecule that is capable of participating in bond formation with the reactive group of the labeling reagent. The target molecule may be in its native state or it may have been modified to participate in formation of a carbon-carbon bond with the novel labeling reagent.

[0079] Ligands that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to sugars, lectins, antigens, intercalators, chelators, biotin, digoxigenin and combinations thereof. The particular choice of a dye used to synthesize a novel labeling reagent of the present invention may depend upon physical characteristics such as absorption maxima, emission maxima, quantum yields, chemical stability and solvent solubility. A large number of fluorescent and chemiluminescent compounds have been shown to be useful for labeling proteins and nucleic acids. Examples of compounds that may be used as the dye portion can include but not be limited to xanthene; anthracene, cyanine, porphyrin and coumarin dyes. Examples of xanthene dyes that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to fluorescein, 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), 5-carboxyfluorescein (5-Fam), 5- or 6-carboxy-4',7,2',7'-tetrachlorofluorescein (TET), 5- or 6-carboxy-4',5',2',4',5',7'-hexachlorofluorescein (HEX), 5' or 6'-carboxy-4',5'-dichloro-2',7'-dimethoxyfluorescein (JOE), 5-carboxy-2',4',5',7'-tetrachlorofluorescein (ZOE) rhodol, rhodamine, tetramethylrhodamine (TAM-RA), 4,7-dichlorotetramethyl rhodamine (DTAMRA), rhodamine X (ROX) and Texas Red. Examples of cyanine dyes that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to Cy 3, Cy 3.5, Cy 5, Cy 5.5, Cy 7 and Cy 7.5. Other dyes that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to energy transfer dyes, composite dyes and other aromatic compounds that give fluorescent signals. Chemiluminescent compounds that may be used in the present invention can include but not be limited to dioxetane and acridinium esters. It should also be understood that ligands and dyes are not mutually exclusive groups. For instance, fluorescein is a well known example of a moiety that has been used as a fluorescent label and also as an antigen for labeled antibodies.

[0080] The reactive group of the novel labeling reagents of the present invention is chosen from chemical moieties that are known to be able to participate in carbon-carbon bond formation thereby allowing the novel labeling reagent to attach a label to a suitable target molecule. Examples of such reactive groups can comprise but not be limited to alkenes, alkynes, metallo-organic compounds and halogenated compounds. The metallo-organic and halogenated

compounds can comprise aromatic, heterocyclic, alkene, and alkyne groups as well as various combinations thereof. Although such groups have been described previously for synthesis of labeled compounds, these reactive groups were only used in the context of adding amino groups to nucleic acids in order to make nucleotides and polynucleotides look like proteins (U.S. Patent No. 4,711,955 and U.S. Patent No. 5,047,519, both of which are incorporated by reference). In the present invention, the reactive group of the novel labeling reagent can be attached directly to a ligand or dye, at the terminal end of a linking arm or at an internal site within a linking arm. A review of various methods for use of metallo-organic and halogenated compounds is given by Larock (1982, Tetrahedron Report 128; 1713-1754), Robins et al. (J. Org Chem 1983, 48; 1854-1862), Hobbs and Cocuzza (U.S. Patent No. 5,047,519), Eglinton and McCrae (1963, Advances in Organic Synthesis 4; 225-328) and Rieke (2000, Aldrichimica Acta 33; 52-60) all of which are incorporated by reference.

[0081] A linking arm that comprises a portion of the novel labeling reagents can be of any desired length and can be comprised of any suitable atoms that can include but not be limited to carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur and any combination thereof. Chemical groups that can comprise the linker arm can include but not be limited to aliphatic bonds, double bonds, triple bonds, peptide bonds, aromatic rings, aliphatic rings, heterocyclic rings, ethers, esters, amides, and thioamides. The linking arm can form a rigid structure or be flexible in nature.

[0082] The present invention may be used to label a large variety of target molecules. The targets may intrinsically comprise chemical moieties that can participate in formation of a carbon-carbon bond with the reactive group of the novel labeling reagent or the targets may be modified such that they comprise such a group. Examples of chemical moieties on target molecules that can combine with the reactive group of the novel labeling reagent can comprise but not be limited to alkenes, alkynes, metallo-organic compounds and halogenated compounds. The metallo-organic and halogenated compounds can comprise aromatic, heterocyclic, alkene and alkyne groups as well as various combinations thereof. Target molecules that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to nucleotides, oligonucleotides, polynucleotides, peptides, oligopeptides, proteins, ligands, synthetic compounds, synthetic polymers, saccharides, polysaccharides, lipids and hormones. Nucleotides that can be labeled by these compounds can include but not be limited to monophosphates, diphosphates or triphosphates. They may be ribonucleotides or deoxynucleotides. Modified nucleotides or Nucleotides analogues of any of the foregoing may also be used if desired. Examples of modified nucleotides can include but not be limited to dideoxy nucleotides and nucleotides with 3' amino or 3' phosphate groups. Examples of nucleotide analogues can include but not be limited to peptide nucleic acids, arabinosides, and acyclo versions. These analogues may be used as nucleotides or as components of oligonucleotides or polynucleotides. Synthesis of a labeled oligonucleotide or polynucleotide can be carried out by the use of nucleotides that have been labeled by the novel labeling reagent. Alternatively, modified nucleotides that have chemical groups that can be used for carbon-carbon bond formation with the novel labeling reagents can be used to synthesize oligonucleotides or polynucleotides. In this method, the presence of reactive groups in the oligonucleotide or polynucleotide products allows a subsequent reaction with the novel labeling reagents of the present invention. Additionally, unmodified oligonucleotides and polynucleotides can be chemically treated such that they comprise groups capable of participating in carbon-carbon bond formation.

[0083] Attachment of the novel labeling reagents of the present invention to desirable target molecules can be carried out by any of a variety of means known to those skilled in the art. For instance, the acetoxymercuration reaction is a well known and established procedure for introducing covalently bound mercury atoms onto the 5-position of the pyrimidine ring or the C-7 position of a deazapurine ring (Dale et al., (1975) Biochemistry 14, 2447-2457, Dale et al. (1973) Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 70; 2238-2242. The nucleotides are treated with the mercuric acetate in sodium acetate buffer to convert them into mercuric salts. In the presence of  $K_2PdCl_4$ , the addition of a labeled reagent of the present invention that has been prepared with a terminal double bond will allow a carbon-carbon double bond to be formed between the aromatic ring of the nucleotide and the terminal carbon of the double bond of the labeling reagent thereby attaching the label to the nucleotide. In the case of novel labeling reagents of cyanine dyes with double bonds at the terminus of a linker, the mercuric nucleotide reacts with the double bond at the terminus of the linker arm rather than the aromatic ring or the conjugated double bond between the two rings of the cyanine dye moiety.

[0084] In an alternative use of the reaction described above, a novel labeling reagent of the present invention can be prepared where the reactive group is a mercury salt. This compound can now react with an unsaturated bond on the target that is desired to be labeled. This bond may be an intrinsic part of the target molecule or the target molecule may be modified to include such a group. Reactions can also be carried out where both the labeling reagent and the target molecules comprise mercury salts. For instance, Larock (1982 op. cit. Eqns. 146-151) has described how two groups that each have the structure  $R_1-C\equiv C-HgCl$  can be joined together in the presence of appropriate catalysts.

[0085] One advantage of the mercuration and palladium catalyzed addition reactions is that they can be carried out in water with a small amount of organic solvent added to increase solubility if necessary. This procedure can be carried out with the nucleotides in any form, for example with ribonucleotides, deoxynucleotides, dideoxynucleotides and any analogue, as well as with oligonucleotides, oligonucleotide analogues, protein nucleic acid complexes and polynucleotides. Alternatively the novel labeling reagent can be prepared with a reactive arm containing a terminal triple bond

or any other substance which is capable of forming the carbon-carbon double bond with the target molecule.

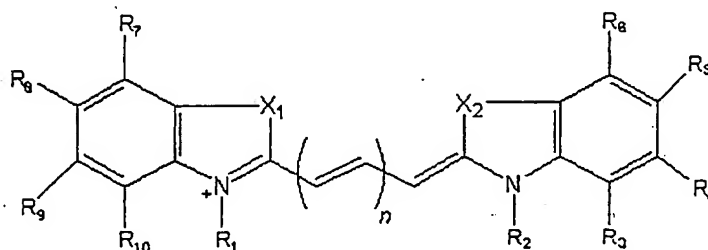
## 2. Labeling Proteins by Carbon-Carbon Bond Formation

[0086] An important use for the novel labeling reagent may also be for attaching signal groups to proteins. In this particular case, modifications of the protein can be made to make them resemble the nucleic acid target described above. For instance, a target protein can be reacted with mercuric acetate thereby forming mercurate compounds at tyrosine, tryptophan or phenylalanine residues in the protein. The protein is now available for reacting with a novel labeling reagent that has an double bond reactive group where displacement of the mercury will take place while attaching the label. If desired, thiol groups in the protein can be protected on the protein by treatment with 2,2'-dipyridyl disulfide prior to the mercuration step.

[0087] Amino acids that have primary amines are also sites on a protein that may be used with the novel labeling reagent. For instance, proteins that lack tyrosine groups can be modified with Bolton-Hunter active ester to introduce tyrosine groups onto primary amines. These can then be subsequently used as described above. Alternatively, the protein can be modified with acrylic acid active ester to introduce terminal double bonds into residues that contain primary amines. This modification would allow proteins to be used with novel labeling reagents of the present invention that have mercurate compounds as reactive groups.

## 3. Dye Precursors With Reactive Groups for Carbon-Carbon Bond Formation

[0088] Attachment of a group to a marker that is suitable for participating in a carbon-carbon bond can be carried out by modification of the marker. On the other hand, attachment can take place with an intermediate that is used to synthesize a particular marker. For example, cyanine dye labeling reagents have the following structure:



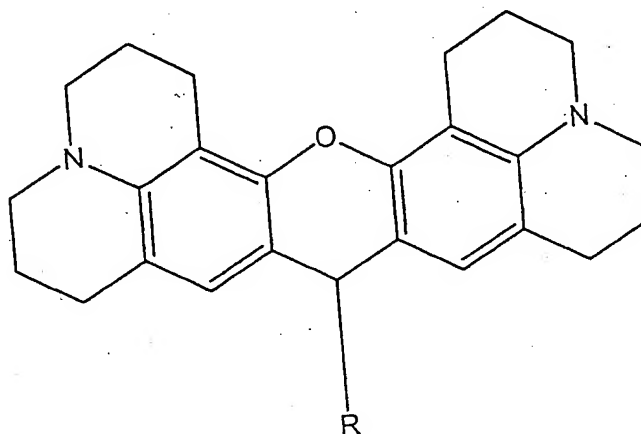
where  $n = 1, 2$  or  $3$ ;  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  can be  $S, O, N, CH_2$  or  $C(CH_3)_2$  and  $R_1$ - $R_8$  comprises a reactive group that could be used to join the cyanine dye to a desirable target molecule. Cyanine dyes are prepared by linking together two indolenine precursor units with an intervening unsaturated chain. The particular number of units making up the chain determines the particular absorption and emission spectra of the cyanine dye.

[0089] According to the method of the present invention, cyanine dyes can be prepared by attaching a linker arm containing a reactive group capable of generating a carbon-carbon bond to the indolenine ring that is a precursor to a cyanine dye. This modified indolenine is a novel compound that can then be used as a reagent in a reaction where it is coupled to a second indolenine ring through an intervening unsaturated alkyl chain to synthesize a cyanine dye with the structure described above. The second indolenine can be the same as the first or it may be an unmodified version that lacks the linker arm and reactive group. The same novel indolenine compound can be used to make a variety of different cyanine dyes depending upon the nature of the second indolenine ring and the particular unsaturated chain joining the two indolenine rings. As a result of this procedure, when the cyanine dye product is formed by joining the precursor rings, it already comprises a linker arm with a reactive group and is ready to be attached to a suitable target molecule.

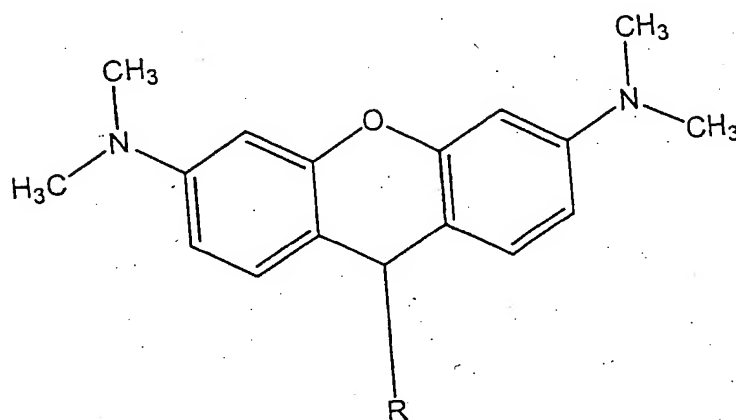
## 4. Novel Rhodamine Dyes Without the Phenyl group

[0090] In another aspect of the present invention, new dyes and means for their synthesis are disclosed. In previous art, derivatives of rhodamine typically have an aromatic group between the dye and the reactive group that is used to attach the rhodamine to a desirable molecule. In the present invention, it is disclosed that stable nucleotides can be synthesized that comprise rhodamine analogues where the linker arm joining the dye to a base on the nucleotides

lacks the aromatic group that is normally present in rhodamine. It is a surprising consequence that incorporation of such nucleotides becomes more acceptable to a polymerase such that the modified nucleotide can be used without mixing it with unmodified nucleotides. As such, the present invention discloses the following novel rhodamine analogues:



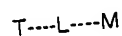
and



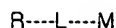
where R is a reactive group.

#### 5. Rigid Linker Arms

[0091] In another aspect of the present invention, methods and compositions are disclosed that enable modified nucleotides to be used more efficiently in enzymatic and chemical means of synthesis and/or allow them to function more efficiently when they are part of a polynucleotide. In one embodiment of the present invention, an increased and directed separation is achieved between a target molecule and the group that has been added to provide a marker or label. In the present invention, the following novel compositions are disclosed that have the formulas:



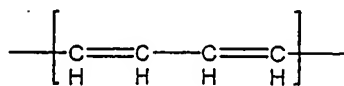
and



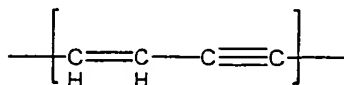
In the diagram above, T is a target for attachment of a marker or label; R is a reactive group that may be used for attachment to a target and M is a marker or label.

[0092] In one aspect of the present invention, L is a chemical group that covalently connects the M moiety to the T moiety or R moiety and comprises one or more of the following groups:

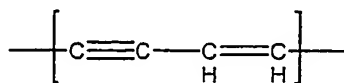
10



15



20



[0093] The alkene groups can be in either cis or trans configuration with regard to each other and they may comprise only hydrogen atoms bonded to the carbon atoms or they may be substituted. In a preferred mode, directionality is derived from having one of the groups above immediately linked to the target, separated by no more than a single intervening atom or linked to the target through a rigid polar unit.

[0094] In another aspect of the present invention, L is a chemical group that covalently connects the M moiety to the T moiety and comprises at least two consecutive rigid polar units.

[0095] Examples of targets that may find use in the present invention can include but not be limited to nucleotides, oligonucleotides, polynucleotides, peptides, polypeptides, cytokines, ligands, haptens, antigens and solid supports.

Examples of solid support that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to beads, tubes, plastic slides, glass slides, microchip arrays, wells and depressions.

[0096] Examples of reactive groups that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to isothiocyanate, isocyanate, monochlorotriazine, dichlorotriazine, mono or di-halogen substituted pyridine, mono or di-halogen substituted diazine, aziridine, sulfonyl halide, acid halide, hydroxy-succinimide ester, hydroxy-sulfosuccinimide ester, imido esters, glyoxal groups, aldehydes amines, sulfhydryl groups, hydroxyl groups. Also included are groups that can participate in carbon carbon bond formation as disclosed previously.

[0097] In the present invention, a rigid unit is defined as a group of atoms where the spatial relations between the atoms are relatively static.

[0098] In the present invention, when two moieties are described as consecutive, the moieties are adjacent or directly next to each other. Additionally, two consecutive moieties can be separated by no more than one atom, i.e. a single atom.

[0099] In the present invention, a rigid unit is non-polar when it essentially comprises the same type of atoms. Examples of non-polar rigid units would be alkenes, alkynes, unsaturated rings, partially saturated rings and completely saturated rings that comprise only carbon and hydrogen.

[0100] In the present invention, a rigid unit is polar when it comprises at least two or more different atoms thereby distributing the charge unequally through the unit. Examples of an arrangement that could contribute to polarity could include but not be limited to a carbon atom that is bonded to N, S, O, P, or a halogen. The heteroatoms that are bonded to the carbon may be used alone or they may be part of polar or charged functional groups. Examples of the latter can include but not be limited to -OH, -SH, -SO<sub>3</sub>, -PO<sub>4</sub>, -COOH and -NH<sub>2</sub> groups. The rigid units can comprise backbones that are linear, branched or in ring form. The ring forms that also comprise polar or charged functional groups attached to the rings may be unsaturated rings, partially saturated rings and completely saturated rings. Multimers of two or more such polar rigid units will provide rigid extended arms that create a defined spatial relationship between a target molecule and a marker or signal generating moiety.

[0101] In the present invention, unsubstituted heterocyclic aromatic compounds would be considered to be non-polar rigid units due to the electron sharing in the ring. On the other hand, substituted heterocyclic aromatic compounds that comprise polar or charged functional groups attached to the rings would be considered to be polar rigid units.

[0102] Examples of linear polar rigid units that would be useful in the present invention can include but not be limited to moieties comprising peptide bonds. Examples of cyclic polar units that have inherent rigidity can include but not be limited to sugars. Examples of groups that would have utility in the present invention that have rigidity derived from the



interactions between subunits can include but not be limited to charged components where charge repulsions can maximize distances between subunits. When negatively charged components are used, there can also be repulsion away from the negatively charged polynucleotide itself. The linker may also be designed with bulky side groups that interfere with rotational changes thereby maintaining a discrete spatial structure with regard to the relationship of a base and a signal or reactive group.

5 [0103] The distance of the reactive group or signal moiety from the target molecule would be determined by the number and nature of the rigid units making up the spacer. Thus, a series of three rigid units that comprise an alkene bond followed by two peptide bonds would extend the signal group directly away from the nucleotide as shown in Figure 1A. This particular example would comprise a non-polar rigid unit as well as two polar rigid units. A series of multiple peptide bonds could still provide rigidity while extending the dye or marker further away from the target molecule as shown in Figure 1B. In this particular illustration a uracil nucleoside is used as a target and glycine subunits are used to provide a series of peptide bonds. Different amino acids may also have been used if so desired, where the various constituents of the R groups of the amino acids may be chosen to endow other properties such as solubility or charge upon the rigid arm.

15 [0104] A linker that is comprised of rigid units will depend upon the particular relationship between the rigid units for whether the overall structure is rigid or not. For instance, multiple peptide bonds have been used in prior art. However, the beneficial qualities of having such bonds were lost by the inclusion of aliphatic carbon groups in between the peptide. In essence, these were rigid units joined by flexible linkers. As seen in Figure 1, the present invention allows for at most a single atom between the rigid units, thereby limiting the extent of flexibility between rigid units. Similarly other groups of a non-carbon nature could be used between groups that would retain an overall rigidity while contributing a potentially desirable directionality. An illustrative example of such a group would be a -S- bond between two rigid units.

20 [0105] As described above, sugar groups may also be used in carrying out the present invention. There are a wide variety of sugars that can be used as individual rigid units and a large number of ways that these sugars can be linked together either enzymatically or chemically has been extensively described in the literature.

25 [0106] Although the present invention makes use of two or more polar rigid units to create a rigid linker arm, it is understood that flexible groups and non-polar rigid units may also be included in the rigid linker arms. For instance, Figure 1 makes use of an alkene bond between the peptide bonds and the uracil moiety. In addition, additional flexible units, rigid units or combinations thereof may be included between the last peptide bond and the dye molecule in Figure 1 while retaining the effectiveness of the linker.

30 [0107] In the present invention, the presence of such an extended linkage away from a nucleotide should decrease deleterious effects upon incorporation since the problematic group should be spatially displaced from the active site where enzymatic incorporation is taking place. In addition, after a modified nucleotide is incorporated either enzymatically or synthetically, functionality may also be increased by the use of the present invention. For instance, extension of a hapten or a chemically reactive group further from an oligonucleotide or polynucleotide should provide increased accessibility thereby improving binding or coupling efficiencies. In addition, signal generation groups could also be displaced away from the oligonucleotide or polynucleotide by the use of the present invention if interference effects are caused by proximity.

35 [0108] The particular point of attachment of the linkers described in the present invention may take advantage of previously described art for flexible linkers. As such, the nucleotides may be normal nucleotides or they may be modified nucleotides or nucleotide analogues with various substituents either added or replacing components in the base, sugar or phosphate moieties as disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 4,711,955; U.S. Patent No. 5,241,060; U.S. Patent No. 4,952,685 and U.S. Patent No. 5,013,831; all of which are hereby incorporated by reference. In addition, these modifications may be non-disruptive, semi-disruptive or disruptive. The point of attachment may be the base, sugar or phosphate as described in the previously recited disclosures, but attachment to the base is particularly useful in the present invention.

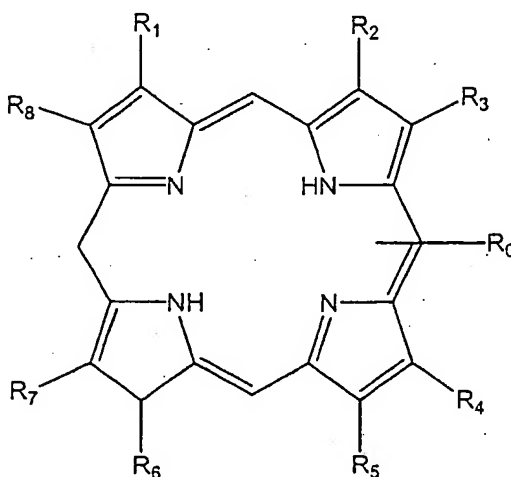
45 [0109] A further benefit of the present invention is that some of the linkers that have been described may offer beneficial results due to their chemistry as well as structure. For instance, the last peptide in a linker composed of peptide subunits offers an amine group that may be used to attach useful groups such as signal moieties. In prior art, amine groups were located at the ends of aliphatic chains, with pK values of about 11. However, since coupling reactions are usually carried out at around pH 8 values, very little of the amine group is in a reactive form at any given time, thereby limiting the efficiency and kinetics of the reaction. In contrast, the amine group at the end of peptide chain has a pK of about 9, a value that is more compatible with the intended coupling reaction. Thereby, the present invention allows more effective coupling of a nucleotide or polynucleotide to an appropriate group.

50 [0110] Also, although this particular aspect of the present invention has been described in terms of a rigid linker intervening between a nucleotide and a dye, other applications may also enjoy the benefits of the present invention. For instance, labeling of proteins can be improved by using the rigid arm of the present invention between the protein and a signal moiety. Examples of proteins that might enjoy these benefits can include but not be limited to antibodies, enzymes, cytokines and libraries of oligopeptides or polypeptides. As described previously for nucleic acids, the use

of the present invention may improve the properties of the labeled compound as well as the efficiency of the labeling itself. Additionally, there are many procedures that involve fixation of a ligand, hapten, protein or a nucleic acid to a solid support. Examples of such supports can include but not be limited to beads, tubes, microtitre plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells and depressions. The present invention can be used to generate a directed separation of a ligand, hapten, protein or nucleic acid away from the surface of the support. Examples of proteins that might enjoy these benefits can include but not be limited to antibodies, enzymes, cytokines and libraries of oligopeptides.

#### 6. Non-Metallic Porphyrins With Reactive Groups on Non-Pyrrole Positions

[0111] In another aspect of the present invention, a novel labeling reagent is disclosed that comprises a non-metallic porphyrin with a reactive group at a non-pyrrole position. The spectral quality of non-metallic alkylated porphyrins as fluorescent dyes has been described in Hendrix in U.S. Patent No. 4,707,454 (incorporated by reference) where Stokes shifts over 150 nm were disclosed. However, when describing reactive groups for the porphyrins, the only teachings that were disclosed made use of chemical groups on the pyrrole positions. Therefore, it is a subject of the present invention that non-metallic porphyrins can be derived which independently comprise hydrogen, aliphatic, unsaturated aliphatic, cyclic, heterocyclic, aromatic, heteroaromatic, charged or polar groups on any or all of the eight pyrrole positions and use one of the non-pyrrole positions as a site for attaching a reactive group. This composition has the following structure:



where R<sub>0</sub> comprises a reactive group attached directly or indirectly to a non-pyrrole position of the porphyrin (i.e., the  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$ , or  $\delta$  positions) and R<sub>1</sub> through R<sub>8</sub> are as defined just above.

[0112] Any of the reactive groups that have been described previously may find use in the present invention as R<sub>0</sub>. R<sub>1</sub> through R<sub>8</sub> may comprise the same groups or they may be different. If desired, the alkyl groups may also further comprise polar or charged groups that may aid in increasing the aqueous solubility of the porphyrin. Also if desired, there may be a linker used to attach a reactive group to the porphyrin. The particular rigid arm used in this aspect of the present invention can be any linker arm that has been previously disclosed or described but it is especially preferred that the rigid linker of the present invention be used. A nitro group can be added to a non-pyrrole position as described by Fuhrhop and Smith "Laboratory Methods" Chapter 19 in Porphyrins and Metalloporphyrins, Kevin M. Smith, editor, Elsevier Scientific Publishing Company, Amsterdam, 1975, hereby incorporated by reference. Reduction of this group to an amine is well known to those skilled in the art and further reaction can be carried out to add a linker or a reactive group by standard techniques.

[0113] Any of the previously described targets may be labeled by the non-metallic porphyrins of the present invention. For example, the non-metallic porphyrins of the present invention may find use by incorporation of a porphyrin labeled nucleotide or synthetically by a porphyrin labeled phosphoramidite. Alternatively, oligonucleotide or polynucleotides can be synthesized that have derivatized nucleotides that are suitable for reaction with a chemically compatible derivative of a non-metallic porphyrin in a post-synthetic step. Labeled oligonucleotides and polynucleotides that comprise the non-metallic porphyrin of the present invention should enjoy a large Stokes shift with high efficiency emission. This composition and method of detection will enjoy a high level of sensitivity as well as enabling high level of discrimination

from other compounds that may be excited at the same wavelength. For instance, if a library of transcripts is labeled with fluorescein and a second library is labeled with octaethylporphine, illumination can be carried out by a single wavelength of 490 nm. Yet, discrimination between the particular fluorophores is easily distinguishable since the emission peak is 530 nm for fluorescein and the emission peak for octaethylporphine is 620 nm. At the same time, the quantum yield for the octaethylporphine is comparable to that of fluorescein. It is also understood that the non-metallic phorphyrins may be used in conjunction with any of the other novel methods that are disclosed herein.

#### 7. Modification of Dyes by Groups that Participate in the Conjugation and/or Electron Delocalized System

[0114] In another embodiment of the present invention, methods are disclosed for the synthesis of novel compositions that comprise two or more unsaturated compounds added to a fluorescent dye without a requirement for the presence of kenone groups in an intermediate. In the present invention, these unsaturated compounds can be unsaturated aliphatic groups, unsaturated cyclic compounds, unsaturated heterocyclic compounds, aromatic groups or any combinations thereof. Attachment of such groups allows them to participate in the conjugation and/or the electron delocalized system (Maulding and Roberts, op. cit. incorporated by reference) of the dye and confer changes upon the spectral characteristics of the dye. These changes can include changing the width of the excitation and emission peaks, shifting the positions of the excitation and emission peaks and increasing the quantum yield.

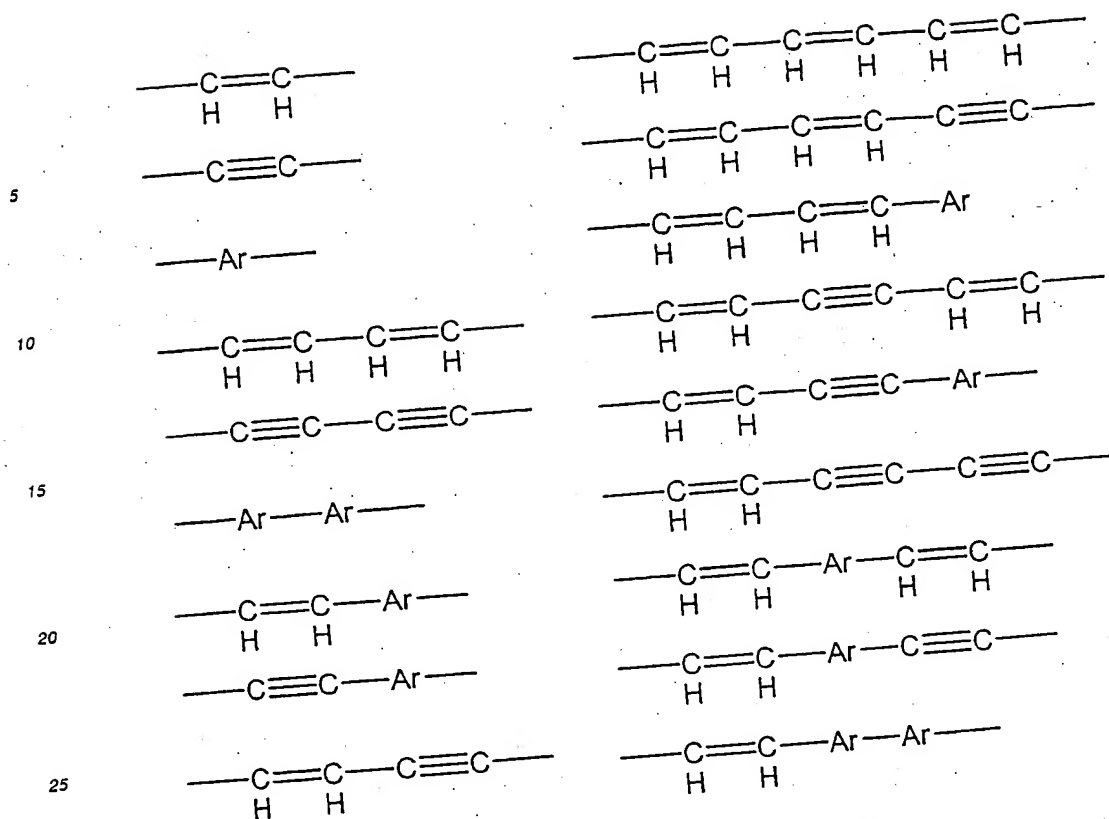
[0115] Since addition of unsaturated groups to the dyes may decrease solubility or result in non-specific hydrophobic interactions, it is an objective of the present invention that this effect can be compensated by a further addition of charged or polar groups. These may be attached to the dye or to the unsaturated compounds. Also, since these novel dyes find use as labeling reagents, they may also comprise reactive groups suitable for attaching the label to desirable target molecules. The reactive groups can be directly or indirectly linked to the dye, to the unsaturated compounds or to the charged or polar modification groups.

[0116] The novel composition of this aspect of the present invention has the following structure:



where Dye is a fluorescent dye; R is covalently linked to the Dye and R comprises two or more unsaturated compounds which can be unsaturated aliphatic groups, unsaturated cyclic compounds, unsaturated heterocyclic compounds, aromatic groups or combinations thereof. Furthermore, one or more members of R participates in the conjugation and/or electron delocalized system of the Dye. The unsaturated compounds can be substituted or unsubstituted. The unsaturated aliphatic group can comprise an alkene or an alkyne. The aromatic group can comprise a phenyl group, an aryl group, or an aromatic heterocycle. When the groups are substituted, the substituents can include but not be limited to alkyl groups, aryl groups, alkoxy groups, phenoxy groups, hydroxyl groups, amines, amino groups, amido groups, carboxyl groups, sulfonates, sulfhydryl groups, nitro groups, phosphates or any group that can improve the properties of the dyes. In the case of an aromatic group, it may also be substituted by being part of a fused ring structure. Examples of such fused rings can include but not be limited to naphthalene, anthracene, and phenanthrene.

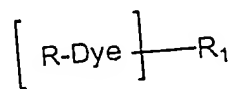
[0117] Groups that can be used as all or part of R can also be described as follows:



30 In the diagram above, Ar is an unsaturated cyclic compound, an unsaturated heterocyclic compound or an aromatic group. As described previously, the groups above may be substituted or unsubstituted.

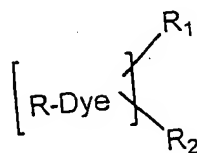
[0118] Fluorescent dyes that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to anthracene, xanthene, cyanine, porphyrin, coumarin and composite dyes. In the case where anthracene is used as the Dye with an alkyne joined to the center ring and a phenyl group attached to the alkyne, the phenyl group will be substituted.

35 [0119] In another aspect of the present invention, a novel composition has the following structure:



where R and Dye are as described previously and where  $\text{R}_1$  is covalently joined to R, Dye or to both R and Dye.  $\text{R}_1$  further comprises one or more charged or polar groups to provide additional solubility. This may be useful when the dye or the dye with the R modification has limited aqueous solubility or problems with non-specific hydrophobic interactions.

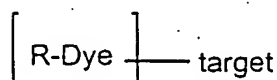
45 [0120] In another aspect of the present invention, a novel composition has the structure



55 where R, Dye and  $\text{R}_1$  are as described previously and where  $\text{R}_2$  is covalently attached to R, Dye,  $\text{R}_1$  or any combination thereof and where  $\text{R}_2$  further comprises a reactive group that can be used to attach the dye to a suitable target molecule.

R<sub>2</sub> can comprise any of the reactive groups previously described including sulfhydryl, hydroxyl and amine groups, groups capable of reacting with sulfhydryl, hydroxyl and amine groups, and groups capable of forming a carbon-carbon bond. R<sub>2</sub> can further comprise a linker arm that separates the reactive group from the dye. The linker arm can be of any desirable length and can comprise a backbone of carbon as well as non-carbon atoms. Non-carbon atoms that may find use can include but not be limited to sulfur, oxygen and nitrogen. The linker arm can comprise saturated, unsaturated or aromatic groups and may also comprise the rigid arms described previously.

[0121] In another aspect of the present invention, a novel labeled target comprises the structure:



where R and Dye are as described previously. Targets that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to a protein, a peptide, a nucleic acid, a nucleotide or nucleotide analog, a receptor, a natural or synthetic drug, a synthetic oligomer, a synthetic polymer, a hormone, a lymphokine, a cytokine, a toxin, a ligand, an antigen, a hapten, an antibody, a carbohydrate, a sugar or an oligo- or polysaccharide. The labeled target can also further comprise R<sub>1</sub> covalently joined to R, Dye or to both R and Dye. R<sub>1</sub> further comprises one or more charged or polar groups to provide additional solubility. This may be useful when the labeled target or an intermediate used for making the labeled target has limited aqueous solubility or problems with non-specific hydrophobic interactions. The labeled target can also further comprise a linker arm as described above separating the dye from the target.

#### 8. Intercalators

[0122] In another aspect of the present invention, a novel method is disclosed that provides enhanced discrimination between an intercalating dye that is bound to a target compared to dye that remains unbound. As described previously, ethidium bromide has been a popular reagent for detection and visualization of DNA in a number of formats. To investigate the effect of a second-phenanthridinium ring system on affinity to nucleic acids, a homodimeric form of ethidium bromide was synthesized and tested (Kuhlmann et al., (1978) *Nucleic Acids Research*, 5; 2629-2633). This compound, N,N-Bis[3-(3,8-diamino-5-methylphenanthridinium-6-yl) benzoyl]1,5-diaminopentane dichloride (*meta*-EthD) exhibited a much higher affinity to nucleic acids than the monomeric form. However, when fluorescence was measured at the standard wavelength of 493nm, the increase in fluorescent emission after binding to nucleic acids was essentially the same as seen earlier for the ethidium bromide monomer.

[0123] It was a surprising and unexpected result that when *meta*-EthD was used in a different manner than the standard format, a greatly enhanced discrimination between bound and unbound was observed. The present invention discloses that when two ethidium bromide molecules are joined together through their phenyl groups, excitation at a wavelength below 400 nm can result in an increase of over 150 fold in fluorescent emission upon the binding of DNA to the homodimer as opposed to the 6 fold increase seen when the samples are excited at 493 nm.

[0124] Two other homodimeric ethidium bromide compounds (EthD-1 and EthD-2) are commercially available from Molecular Probes, Inc. (Eugene, OR). However, in contrast to the results with *meta*-EthD, the discrimination between bound and unbound dye was not substantially changed by exciting at wavelengths below 400nm. It should be pointed out that although *meta*-EthD, EthD-1 and EthD-2 are all ethidium bromide dimers, they are chemically dissimilar. As shown in (Figure 2), *meta*-EthD is comprised of two phenanthridinium rings linked together through the *meta* position of the phenyl rings through amide bonds. In contrast, the phenanthridinium rings of EthD-1 and EthD-2 dimers are joined together through the nitrogen of the center rings rather than through the phenyl rings. The intervening chain is comprised of an alkyl chain with two amine attachment groups which are secondary in EthD-1 and methylated to give the quaternary salts for EthD-2. The inability of the EthD-1 and EthD-2 compounds to exhibit the same results seen with *meta*-EthD demonstrates that the method of the present invention was not a predictable property of ethidium dimers *per se*.

[0125] The method of the present invention may find use in many methods that had been previously described for ethidium bromide, ethidium bromide homodimers and other intercalators. Of especial use, is the application of the present method towards real time analysis of nucleic acid amplification and probes labeled with *meta*-EthD. The large increase in fluorescence after illumination at wavelengths under 400nm will allow a better signal to noise ratio than previous methods. Thereby, the present invention should enjoy a higher sensitivity of detection of the synthesis of nucleic acids during such amplification procedures.

[0126] In previous art, ethidium bromide has also been modified through the center ring by attaching other intercalators (U.S. Patent No. 5,646,264) and fragments of intercalators (U.S. Patent No. 5,582,984 and U.S. Patent No.

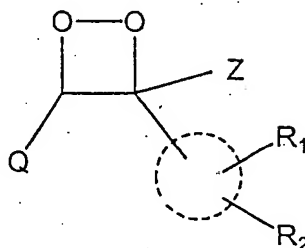
5,599,932) for improved performance of binding to double stranded DNA. Modification groups similar to those disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 5,582,984 have also been added to the central ring of ethidium bromide to improve performance with RNA (U.S. Patent No. 5,730,849). In light of the results with the *meta*-EthD, it is disclosed that the modifications in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,646,264; 5,582,984; 5,599,932; and 5,730,849; all of which are incorporated by reference, may also be used to synthesize novel compounds by replacing the center ring with the phenyl ring as an attachment site. These may also be used in many of the applications previously described for ethidium bromide, ethidium bromide dimers, ethidium bromide heterodimers, modified ethidium bromide compositions and other intercalators.

### 9. Novel Chemiluminescent Reagents

[0127] In another embodiment of the present invention, novel 1,2-dioxetanes compounds are disclosed that when used as substrates for selected enzymes result in an intramolecular reaction between two groups attached to different sites of an aromatic ring thereby leading to chemiluminescent signal generation. In another aspect of the present invention, the novel 1,2-dioxetanes compounds are disclosed that are substrates for modification enzymes rather than degradative enzymes where the modification event can lead to chemiluminescent signal generation.

#### a. Enzyme dependent interactions between two groups attached to different sites on a cyclic ring

[0128] In another aspect of the present invention, novel 1,2-dioxetane reagents are disclosed that comprise two groups attached to different sites of a cyclic ring where after catalysis by an appropriate enzyme, the reagent undergoes an intramolecular reaction thereby leading to chemiluminescent signal generation. The reagents of this aspect of the present invention have the structure:



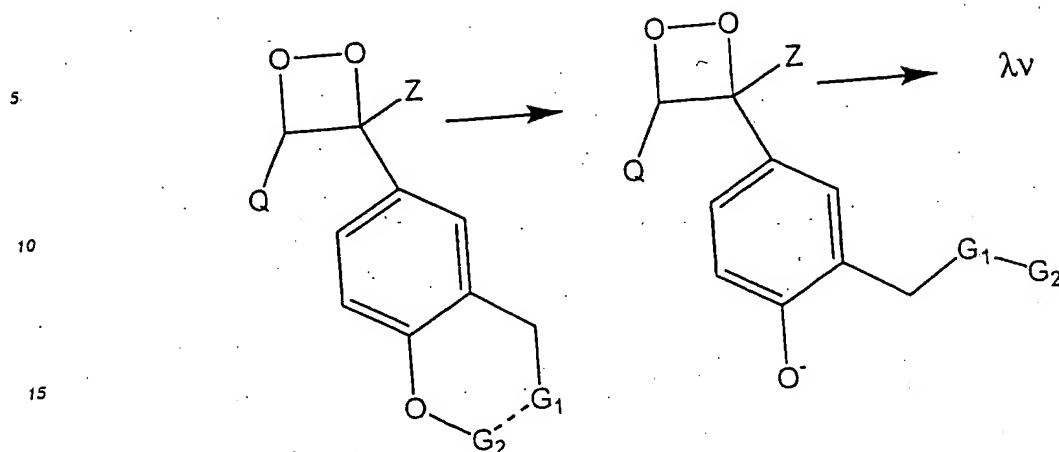
where Q comprises a cycloalkyl or polycycloalkyl group located on one side of the dioxetane and R1 and R2 are located on different sites of a cyclic ring that is bonded to the other side of the 1,2-dioxetane. Z can comprise hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, alkaryl, heteroalkyl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl, or cycloheteroalkyl groups. In a preferred embodiment, Q comprises an adamantyl group. In another preferred embodiment, the two sites where R1 and R2 are attached are adjacent to each other on an aromatic ring. R1 comprises a chemical group that is a substrate for an enzymatic activity. In the presence of the appropriate enzyme, R1 is catalytically converted into R1\* which comprises a chemically reactive group G1. R2 is attached to the ring through an oxygen atom and comprises a chemical group G2 that is capable of interacting with the G1 group that is produced by the conversion of R1 into R1\*. Due to the rigidity imparted by the ring, G1 is in close proximity to G2 thereby endowing the interaction to take place with favorable kinetics. This interaction leads to formation of an unstable dioxetane thereby producing chemiluminescence.

[0129] R2 can comprise an aliphatic group, substituted aliphatic group, an aromatic group or any combination of the foregoing. In the cases where R2 comprises a substituted aliphatic group, the substituents can be halogens, nitrate, sulfur or nitrite. The aliphatic group can be substituted at one position or in several positions. The substituents at each position can be the same or different.

[0130] - As described above, after the enzymatic conversion of R1 into R1\*, a chemically reactive group G1 is formed. Chemically reactive atoms that may find use as part of G1 may include but not be limited to nitrogen, sulfur or oxygen. Enzymes that may find use with present invention can include but not be limited to amidases, esterases, acetylcholinesterases, acid and alkaline phosphatases, decarboxylases, lipases, glucosidase, xylosidase, fucosidase, trypsin and chymotrypsin. Enzymatic substrates that may find use as constituents of R1 can include but not be limited to amides, esters, phosphates, carboxylic acid, fatty acids, glucose, xylose, fucose or amino acids.

[0131] Although it is not essential, R1 can also be designed such that after the enzymatic conversion of R1 into R1\* the interaction between G1 and G2 creates a 5 or 6 membered ring which is known to be an especially stable conformation. An example of formation of such an intermediate is shown below using oxygen as the connection of R2 to an

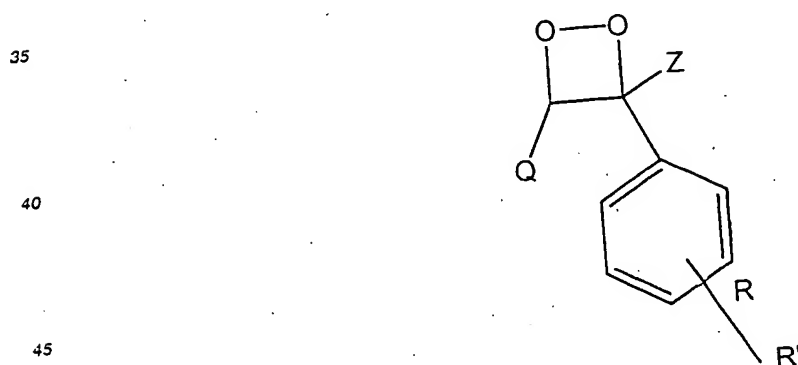
aromatic ring:



20 As shown above, the intermediate structure can undergo an internal substitution reaction that transfers the G2 group to the G1 group of the R1\* moiety thereby releasing the oxygen and creating an unstable phenoxy ion leading to an unstable form of dioxetane and production of a chemiluminescent signal. The juxtaposition of the G1 and G2 groups caused by locating each group on a segment of a rigid structure should allow efficient interaction and subsequent substitutions and rearrangements to form the light producing intermediate after production of G1 by enzymatic activity.

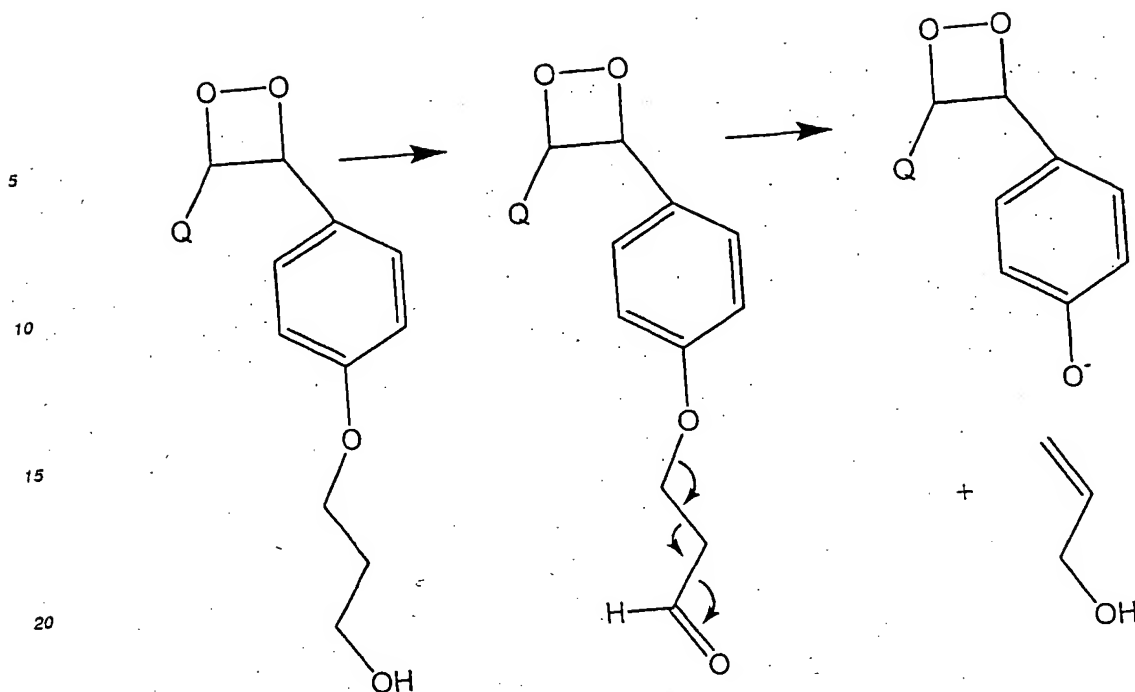
25 **b. Chemiluminescence generation derived from modification enzymes**

30 [0132] In another aspect of the present invention novel 1,2-dioxetane derivatives are disclosed in which the triggering event that leads to the decomposition and production of chemiluminescent signal is an enzyme modification of a specific group of the structure. This is in direct contrast to previous examples in which the triggering event is the cleavage of a substituent. In a preferred mode, the modification of the substituent is dependent upon an enzymatic reaction. An example of such a composition is given below:



50 In the diagram above, Q and Z are defined as described previously and R can comprise a chain of atoms consisting of C, N, O, S or any other atoms required. R can also comprise saturated or unsaturated groups. Furthermore, R' can include but is not limited to alcohols or carboxylic groups. The modification reaction that can lead to light production reaction can include but not be limited to oxidation and reductions. Enzymes that can be used in this aspect of the present invention can include but not be limited to oxidases and reductases.

55 [0133] A representative example of this process is given below where a dioxetane derivative comprising a terminal alcohol is enzymatically converted to an aldehyde by the action of alcohol dehydrogenase.



[0134] This resulting product can then undergo  $\beta$  elimination that then results in the unstable phenoxide ion that triggers the decomposition of the 1,2-dioxetane resulting in the chemiluminescent signal.

#### 10. Real-Time Signal Generation

[0135] The present invention discloses a method of signal generation that can be used for labeling either discrete nucleic acids or a library of multiple sequences. The present invention provides methods and compositions for specifically labeling analytes of interest in the presence of other nucleic acid sequences. The present invention may also be used for the detection of the presence and/or amount of nucleic acids of interest during the course of using such nucleic acids as templates for further nucleic acid synthesis. This can be carried out either by post-synthesis analysis or real-time analysis during the course of such synthesis. In the present invention, nucleic acids are synthesized that comprise at least one first element of an energy transfer pair and at least one second element of an energy transfer pair. When a first energy transfer element is capable of acting as an energy donor, the second energy transfer element is capable of acting as an energy transfer acceptor. Conversely, the first element can be an energy transfer acceptor and the second element can be an energy donor. This second element comes into association with the first element by virtue of either being incorporated into the same nucleic acid strand that comprises a first element or by binding to a nucleic acid strand. In the absence of nucleic acid synthesis or a binding event, there is little or no energy transfer from the donor to the acceptor. However, by the appropriate designs, the present invention allows energy transfer from a donor to an acceptor during or after nucleic acid synthesis.

[0136] Various embodiments of the present invention use labeled primers, probes, nucleotides, nucleic acid binding agents and solid supports as sources of energy transfer elements. In the present invention, a probe and a primer share the common characteristic of binding to complementary sequences with the proviso that a primer has the additional property of being able to be extended. Nucleic acid constructs may also be used in the present invention as primers, probes or templates. In the present invention a nucleic acid construct comprises a nucleic acid with sequences that are either identical or complementary to all or a portion of a nucleic acid of interest and may further comprise at least one non-natural or artificial element.

[0137] Examples of non-natural or artificial elements that could comprise a nucleic acid construct can include but not be limited to promoter sequences, capture sequences, identity tag sequences, consensus sequences, protein binding sequences, artificial primer binding sequences, modified nucleotides, nucleotide analogues, abasic sites, labels, ligands, peptides and proteins. Furthermore nucleic acid constructs may comprise analytes. These analytes can be individual specific sequences or a library of sequences. They may be the original analyte itself or a copy thereof. They can be derived from chromosomes, episomes or fragments thereof. Examples of episomes can include but not be limited to plasmids, mitochondrial DNA, chloroplast DNA and viruses.



*a. Energy transfer between labeled primers*

[0138] In one embodiment of the present invention, the first and second energy transfer elements are components of at least two primers or nucleic acid constructs that can be extended in the presence of appropriate nucleic acids. At least one of these primers or nucleic acid constructs will comprise sequences that are complementary to sequences that are present in a portion of a nucleic acid of interest. At least one other primer or nucleic acid construct will comprise sequences that are identical to sequences that are present in another portion of the nucleic acid of interest. In this way, a nucleic acid of interest can be used as a template for binding and extension of the primer or nucleic acid constructs. Separation or displacement of the extended primer from the target allows the target strand to be used for another primer binding/extension event. In addition the extended primer can itself be used for a primer binding/extension event. Thus one would create a product that comprises two extended primers hybridized to each other. In this aspect of the present invention, the primers used for the preceding sequential primer binding/extension events comprise either a first energy transfer element or a second energy transfer element. If the primers in each strand are in sufficient proximity to each other, they would be capable of allowing an energy transfer event from a donor to an acceptor. This process can be used to create a double-stranded labeled nucleic acid. Of especial utility for diagnostic purposes, the extent of the signal generated by this process can be used to identify the presence and quantity of the particular nucleic acids used as templates.

[0139] The amount of signal can also be increased by introduction of amplification processes. For instance, the use of a primer for each strand of a desirable nucleic acid target is the basis of many target amplification procedures where strand extension of each primer generates templates for further synthetic events. These methods can depend upon discrete steps such as those employed in PCR (U.S. Patent No. 4,683,202) or they can be continuous isothermal methods such as SDA (U.S. Patent Nos. 5,270,184 and 5,455,166) and Loop Mediated Amplification (U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 09/104,067; and European Patent Application No. EP 0 971 039 A) (all the foregoing incorporated by reference). Thus, although the present invention can be used for post-synthesis assessment of the amount of synthesis of appropriate nucleic acids, it can also be used during the multiple synthetic steps that take place during the course of amplification, i.e. real time analysis. Amplification can be carried out under the same conditions used in the absence of labeled primers or an additional step can be included that can increase the efficiency or selectivity of signal generation. For instance, for real time analysis of an isothermal reaction, monitoring can take place continuously or at chosen intervals. In the latter method, an extra step can be carried out where either a sample is removed for analysis or a thermal step is introduced that promotes signal generation or reading at a particular state but does not substantially interfere with the continuation of the reaction.

[0140] In previous art, the design of primer locations for double stranded synthetic nucleic acid products for diagnostic purposes has been to have the primers for each strand located sufficiently apart that additional sequences are incorporated in between them that can be used for hybridization with probes or characterization by restriction enzymes. Thus, the sequences of double stranded synthetic nucleic acid products would be derived from two sources. First, there would be intrinsic sequences derived from the primers and their complements. These will be present independent of what particular target segment was used as a template. Secondly, there would be the sequences between the primer segments. These would be totally dependent upon the nature of the particular nucleic acid segment used as a template for nucleic acid synthesis. Depending upon the nature of the design of the primers, the conditions of the reaction and the particular nucleic acid sequences in the sample used in the amplification reaction, only a particular desirable sequence may be synthesized or other non-desirable sequences may also be synthesized. For diagnostic purposes, the segments between the primers have then been used as a target for a labeled probe to generate a signal that would be dependent upon the presence and amount of only the desirable sequences.

[0141] In this particular embodiment of the present invention, the requirement for extended sequences between the primer segments is abrogated since probes are not used for the detection of the amplification product. In fact, the present invention discloses that a proximity between the primers at each end of an amplicon is a desirable arrangement that can be used for a novel means of signal generation. By including a first element into a primer for one target strand and a second element into a primer for the complementary target strand, proximity of these two primers in a double stranded amplicon allows energy transfer to take place from the element that acts as a donor to the element that acts as an acceptor even though each element is on a different strand.

[0142] As described previously, various amplification systems that are based upon a series of primer extension reactions that result in double stranded amplicons with incorporated primers will be able to enjoy this particular embodiment of the present invention. For instance, Figure 3 shows potential amplification products for a) PCR and b) SDA. Details of the processes that can be used for these amplification methods can be seen in numerous publications including the original patent for each of these methods (Mullis et al. in U.S. Patent No. 4,683,202 and Walker et al., in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,270,184 and 5,455,166; incorporated herein by reference). Even though these methods employ different principles, the presence of a labeled primer or nucleic acid construct in each strand of an a double-stranded nucleic acid allows the use of the present invention. In addition, other methods that have been previously disclosed

may find use with the present invention including multiprimer amplification (U.S. Patent Application Serial Nos. 08/182,621; filed January 13, 1994; 09/302,816, filed March 31, 1998; and 09/302,818, filed February 3, 1998; and 09/302,817, filed April 16, 1999) and amplification with inverted oligonucleotides (U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 5,462,854) all of which are hereby incorporated by reference.

5 [0143] As described previously, this particular embodiment of the present invention depends upon a proximity between the primers or nucleic acid constructs on each strand. In terms of an extended strand made from a first primer or nucleic acid construct, this can also be described as the proximity between the segment derived from the incorporated first primer or nucleic acid construct and the segment that can be used as a binding site for the second primer or nucleic acid construct to synthesize the complementary strand. For instance, proximity can be achieved by having these two  
10 segments being immediately adjacent to each other on an extended strand. In such a case, the nucleic acid sequences of the extended strands would be entirely derived from the sequences of the primers or nucleic acid construct and their complements. To depict this more clearly, an arbitrary sequence is shown in Figure 4 with potential primer arrangements that could be used in the present invention. In Figure 4 (A) the sequences chosen for primers are immediately adjacent to each other on each strand. Alternatively, there can be a gap between the primer segment and the primer binding segment on one strand as long as there is sufficient proximity for energy transfer between the donors and acceptors in the amplification product. An example of a longer spacing using the same target sequence is shown in Figure 4 (B).  
15 [0144] It should also be noted that in addition to allowing a novel system of signal generation, the reduction of the amplicon size such that it comprises little more than primer binding regions should confer advantages over the more traditional longer amplicons. These should include shorter extension times, sharper melting points, and overall higher efficiency in each round of amplification since the amount of synthesis is of a minimal nature. Also, the choice of appropriate energy transfer elements and detection systems can allow multiplex amplification to monitor more than one target sequence.

[0145] In the presence of the appropriate target sequences, signal generation should increase as more labeled primers become incorporated into double-stranded nucleic acids. This signal generation should be specific and proportional  
25 to the presence of appropriate target molecules in the sample. Thus, in the absence of nucleic acid synthesis, there should be little or no energy transfer between donor and acceptor molecules since each element is located on a separate primer or nucleic acid construct. Secondly, signal generation can be carried out under reaction conditions that allow little or no nucleic acid synthesis in the absence of appropriate target templates. One way that this can be carried out is by appropriate design of the primers themselves such that primer-dimer formation is minimized, for instance by selecting primer sequences that have no overlap between their 3' ends. On the other hand, if non-target nucleic acids  
30 are present that have sequences present which have some similarity to the primer binding sequences, nucleic acid synthesis may take place, but the nucleic acid product is unlikely to have the primers incorporated into the appropriate lengths for energy transfer to take place. Another way that target-specific signal generation can be increased is by the use of what has been termed "nested PCR". In this method, the majority of amplification is carried out by a second set  
35 of primers that flank the labeled primers. This is shown in Figure 3 (C). The labeled primers can be present in reduced amounts, require different annealing conditions or be used in separate short amplification reactions. This should reduce the involvement of the labeled primers in amplification of either primer-dimers or non-target sequences. In this particular instance, it may even be possible to successfully generate target dependent signals with labeled primers or nucleic acid constructs that have some degree of overlap between their 3' ends. Lastly, target independent products should  
40 have a different length and/or base composition thereby allowing a differentiation between target specific double-stranded nucleic acids and inappropriate products by their thermal profiles. As described previously, this profile can be obtained as part of the process or a separate step may be introduced to obtain such a profile.

[0146] Although this particular embodiment of the present invention has been described in terms of incorporation of nucleotides, there are also means for extending primers that depend upon the addition of polynucleotides rather than  
45 individual nucleotides. As such, two of these methods, LCR (U.S. Patent No. 5,494,810) and GAP-LCR (U.S. Patent No. 6,004,286), may also enjoy the benefits of the present invention. These methods depend upon the use of two sets of adjacent oligonucleotides where each set is complementary to one particular strand of a target nucleic acid. In the present invention, a first energy transfer element will be in one or more oligonucleotides complementary to one strand and a second energy transfer will be in one or more oligonucleotides complementary to the other strand. An illustration  
50 of the use of the present invention with this method is shown in Figure 3(D).

#### ***b. Energy transfer between a labeled primer and nucleotide(s)***

[0147] In another embodiment of the present invention, one or more primers or nucleic acid constructs that comprise  
55 a first energy transfer element are used in conjunction with at least one nucleotide that comprises a second energy transfer element. After target template directed addition of nucleotides to the primer or nucleic acid construct, energy transfer can then take place by interaction between a first energy transfer element in one primer or nucleic acid construct and a second energy transfer elements in an incorporated nucleotide. The labeled primer or nucleic acid construct and

the labeled nucleotide or nucleotides can be on the same strand if only a single primer or nucleic acid construct is used during primer extension events. Linear amplification can also be carried out where the primer or nucleic acid construct is used for successive rounds of binding/extension events.

[0148] On the other hand as described previously, the inclusion of one or more primers or nucleic acid constructs that can use the extended primers or extended nucleic acid constructs as templates can allow further synthesis. In this case, the second energy transfer elements that are introduced by nucleotide incorporation can be in both the extended strand and its complementary copy. Figure 5 shows potential amplification products made by various amplification processes that illustrate this particular embodiment of the present invention. In Figures 5 (A), 5 (B) and 5 (C), one or more of the primers used for amplification contain an energy transfer element. Although this Figure shows the acceptor element (A) being present in primers and the donor elements (D) being present in the nucleotides incorporated during amplification, the opposite arrangement may also be used. In this particular aspect of the present invention, the spacing between the primers can be of any desired length that is appropriate for carrying out the amplification.

[0149] As described previously, various methods may be employed to selectively generate signal from only appropriate targets. These can include primer design, thermal profiling of double-stranded nucleic acids and nested amplification. This particular embodiment of the present invention is also amenable to multiplex formats. For instance, if various primers are used such that more than one extended primer species is synthesized, they can be distinguished from each other by using a common energy transfer donor in the nucleotides and different energy transfer acceptors in each of the primers. Each of the individual nucleic acid products can then be identified by the spectral characteristics of the acceptor on the primer.

[0150] Previous art has described the dual use of both a primer that comprises a first energy transfer element and a dideoxynucleotide that comprises a second energy transfer element (Kwok and Chen, U.S. Patent No. 5,945,283). The present invention differs from this art in using nucleotides that are not strand terminators in the reaction mix thereby a) allowing for the possibility of multiple incorporation events and b) allowing sufficient synthesis that the extended strand could be used as a template for synthesis of a complementary nucleic acid if desired.

### *c. Energy transfer between labeled nucleotides*

[0151] In another embodiment of the present invention, it is disclosed that signal generation can take place during synthesis with labeled nucleotides only. In this particular embodiment, synthesis is carried out in the presence of at least one nucleotide that comprises a first energy transfer element and at least one nucleotide that comprises a second energy transfer element. The nucleotides that comprise first and second energy transfer elements may be the same nucleotide, for instance by using a mixture of dUTP, where some are labeled with an energy transfer donor and some are labeled with an energy transfer acceptor. On the other hand, they may be different nucleotides, for instance by using a mixture that has dUTP labeled with an energy transfer donor and dCTP labeled with an energy transfer acceptor.

[0152] As described above, incorporation of nucleotides that comprise first and second energy transfer elements can take place during a single round of strand extension, multiple rounds of extension of one strand for linear amplification, or by the provision of at least one second primer or nucleic acid construct for exponential amplification. Figure 5 (D) shows a PCR amplification product where both donors and acceptors have been incorporated through labeled nucleotides. In the absence of incorporation, there will be little or no energy transfer between one nucleotide to another. However, once they have been incorporated into nucleic acid strands, they are in position to be able to allow energy transfer to take place. This can be through intrastrand interactions in the same strand or through interstrand interactions between nucleotides on complementary strands. A particular nucleotide base may consist entirely of labeled nucleotide or there may be a mixture of labeled and unlabeled nucleotides.

[0153] Although methods such as PCR and SDA produce double-stranded amplicons as their major product, there are systems such as NASBA that alternate between double-stranded DNA and single-stranded RNA forms. In these amplification methods, the present invention finds use by providing either energy transfer labeled deoxyribonucleotides for labeling the DNA or energy transfer labeled ribonucleotides for labeling RNA products. In the latter case the presence of both donor-labeled and acceptor-labeled ribonucleotides in the RNA strands would allow intrastrand energy transfer. As described previously, various methods may be employed to selectively generate signal only from appropriate amplicons. These can include primer design, thermal profiling of double-stranded amplicons and nested amplification. Additionally, since signal generation in this particular embodiment of the present invention is derived from the energy transfer between incorporated nucleotides, the method described by Singer and Haugland (U.S. Patent No. 6,323,337 B1) can also be used where the primers comprise energy quenchers. Quenchers that may be used for this purpose can include non-fluorescent derivatives of fluorescein, rhodamine, rhodol or triaryl methane dyes as described by Singer and Haugland (op. cit.).

*d. Energy transfer between a fluorescent intercalator and a labeled primer or nucleotide(s)*

[0154] The previous embodiments of the present invention have utilized primers and nucleotides as energy transfer elements. Another embodiment of the present invention discloses that nucleic acid binding agents can be used as energy transfer elements after strand extension. It has previously been described in U.S. Patent No. 4,868,103 that energy transfer can be used in a hybridization assay that involves a labeled probe and an intercalator. In contrast to this art, a labeled primer or nucleic acid construct with a first energy transfer element is extended to synthesize nucleic acids that can be bound by a nucleic acid binding agent that comprises a second energy transfer element and is substantially sequence independent. Binding can take place while the extended strand is still base-paired with its template or after separation from the template i.e. the extended strand is in double-stranded or single-stranded form. The nucleic acid binding agent can be a protein or a chemical that has a high affinity for nucleic acids. An example of proteins that may find use with the present invention may include but not be limited to T4 gene 32 protein, SSB protein, histones and antibodies. The T4 gene 32 protein and SSB protein have affinities for single-stranded nucleic acids and the histones have an affinity for double-stranded nucleic acids. Antibodies specific for nucleic acids and for RNA/DNA hybrids have been described in the literature (U.S. Patent No. 6,221,581 and U.S. Patent No. 6,228,578). Methods for attaching fluorescent labels to proteins have been widely described in the art. An example of a chemical that has a preferential affinity for single strand nucleic acids can include but not be limited to SYBR™ Green II. An example of a chemical that has a preferential affinity for double-stranded nucleic acids can include but not be limited to intercalators. Examples of intercalators that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to Acridine, Ethidium Bromide, Ethidium Bromide Homodimers, SYBR™ Green I, TOTO™, YOYO™, BOBO™ and POPO™. The binding agent can comprise a energy transfer element directly or indirectly. Proteins labeled with an energy transfer element would be examples of indirect means. The intercalators listed above would be examples of direct means.

[0155] Also, energy transfer to or from nucleic acid binding agents can be carried out by labeled nucleotides instead of labeled primers if desired. When the nucleic acid is in double-stranded form, this embodiment of the present invention can take advantage of the ability of some intercalators to have enhanced fluorescence upon binding to double-stranded nucleic acids. As has been mentioned earlier, this effect has been used by itself to monitor real time nucleic acid synthesis during amplification reactions. However, when used alone, this method suffers from the amount of background exhibited by the dye alone or by dye binding to single-stranded primers. This deficiency may be overcome by the present invention since unbound dye should be unable to undergo an energy transfer interaction with unincorporated labeled nucleotides. As such, the present invention should enhance the selectivity of signal generation compared to using a labeled nucleic acid binding agent alone.

[0156] As described previously, various methods may be employed to selectively generate signal from only appropriate target molecules. These can include primer design, thermal profiling of double-stranded amplicons and nested amplification.

*e. Energy transfer between a labeled probe and nucleotide(s)*

[0157] There may be circumstance where the specificity contributed by nucleic acid probes may be desirable. Therefore, another aspect of the present invention, discloses novel means of signal generation where at least one nucleic acid probe that comprises a first energy transfer element is used in conjunction with either nucleotides that comprise second energy transfer elements. Previous art has described the use of an energy transfer labeled primer and an energy transfer labeled sequence specific probe (Wittwer et al. in U.S. Patent No. 6,174,670). In contrast to this art, the present method is not constrained to the use of a probe that is in proximity to the primer alone but allows the use a probe designed to anneal to any location on the nucleic acid strand that is desirable. In addition, the present invention conveys the ability to use multiple energy transfer probes by using various segments of the extended nucleic acids as probe targets. Thus, when using nucleotides that comprise energy transfer elements, signal generation should take place after hybridization of labeled probes to the labeled nucleic acid strand.

[0158] For instance, after strand-extension, the separation or removal of the template strand can allow the binding of a probe to a single-stranded extended strand and thereby allowing energy transfer to take place between first energy transfer elements in the probe and second energy transfer elements that have been incorporated into the extended strand. Energy transfer to or from first elements in the probe can be derived from the segments that are hybridized to the probe, or if they are in sufficient proximity, they may be from adjacent single-stranded regions. Another illustrative example of the present invention makes use of loop-mediated amplification (U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 09/104,067; European Patent Application Publication No. EP 0 971 039 A). One of the structures generated by this system is a single-stranded loop adjacent to a double stranded stem. Therefore, as disclosed in the present invention, a probe can be bound to sequences in the loop region and undergo an energy transfer reaction with incorporated nucleotides.

[0159] In this embodiment of the present invention, specificity is generated by two factors. First, the strand extension

events should be dependent upon the specificity of the primer binding/extension reactions themselves. Secondly, the probes are blocked at their 3' ends and only participate by binding to appropriate sequences when these are synthesized as a result of the primer extension reactions.

[0160] The various embodiments of the present invention that have been disclosed above can be used in homogeneous assay systems. However, there are also advantages that are offered by the use of solid supports with the present invention. Fixation to solid supports can take place prior to initiation of extension reactions, during strand extensions, and after completion of strand extensions. Examples of solid supports that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells and depressions. Fixation to the support can be carried out either directly or indirectly. As an example of indirect fixation, a capture agent may be attached to the solid support. This capture agent may be a nucleic acid with sequences that are complementary to sequences that are present in a primer, a nucleic acid construct, an analyte or a copy of an analyte thereby allowing fixation through hybridization. Another example of a capture agent could be an antibody that has an affinity for a nucleic acid. (U.S. Patent No. 4,994,373; U.S. Patent No. 4,894,325; U.S. Patent No. 5,288,609; U.S. Patent No. 6,221,581 B1; and U.S. Patent No. 6,228,578; all of which are incorporated by reference).

[0161] As an example of direct fixation, many of the previous embodiments employ a primer for strand extension. Therefore if desired, these primers could be covalently attached to a solid support prior to carrying out any extension reactions. In the presence of the appropriate nucleic acids, strand extension can then occur as described previously thereby resulting in strand extension products that are also directly attached to the solid support. First and second energy transfer elements can be in the primers fixed to the solid support and/or they can be in nucleotides, probes or nucleic acid binding agents as described in the various embodiments disclosed above. An illustrative example of this would be the use of amplification on a microarray as described in Rabbani et al., U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 09/896,897, filed on June 30, 2001 (incorporated by reference) with at least one set of primers at a locus comprising a first energy transfer element and nucleotides comprising second energy transfer elements. With the appropriate apparatus, each locus on the chip could then be separately monitored for the extent of synthesis during the course of the amplification. Another example of direct attachment would be the use of primers that comprise ligands and solid supports that comprise the appropriate ligand receptors. An illustrative example of this arrangement could be the use of poly T primers that have been labeled with biotin and using beads that are coated with avidin or streptavidin for fixation. Nucleotides that comprise first energy transfer elements can be incorporated into a cDNA copy made with the poly T primer and the complex of a cDNA bound to its RNA template can bind intercalators that comprise second energy transfer elements. In this example, attachment of the primers to the beads can take place before, during or after the strand extensions.

#### *f. Solid supports comprising energy transfer elements*

[0162] In addition, a solid support is not relegated to only a passive role. In another embodiment of the present invention, a solid support comprises a first energy transfer element. Fixation of a nucleic acid to the support can then bring a second energy transfer element into sufficient proximity for a signal to be generated. In this embodiment of the present invention, the second energy transfer element can be part of a nucleotide, primer, probe or nucleic acid binding agent. As an illustrative example, a matrix is made with a selection of nucleic acid probes on an array. The matrix is then treated such that first energy transfer elements are fixed to the surface as well. In the presence of appropriate templates or analytes, synthesis of a group of nucleic acids with second energy transfer elements is then carried out as described previously. Hybridization of the labeled nucleic acids to the array brings the second energy elements into proximity with the surface bound first elements. Signal should then be generated by energy transfer that corresponds to the amount of nucleic acids that are bound to a particular locus on the array. An illustration of this principle as well as some of the other embodiments described previously is depicted in Figure 6. Solid supports with capture elements can also be used in methods where no extension reactions are required. For instance, a solid support, a capture oligo or an antibody specific for nucleic acids can comprise a first element. Signal generation can then occur after binding of an unlabeled analyte in either single stranded or double stranded form to the support where the presence of the second element is dictated by the presence and amount of the analyte that becomes bound to the support. For instance the second element can be part of the complex in the form of a probe or a nucleic acid binding agent.

#### *g. Previous processes (a through f) used for labeling*

[0163] Generation of signal from first and second energy transfer elements after target dependent strand synthesis can be used for the purpose of detecting the presence or amount of a nucleic acid of interest in a sample. When signal generation is dependent upon the specificity of the priming events, the procedures are carried out under conditions where target independent primer extension is minimized or as described previously, methods are included that distinguish between target derived nucleic acids and spurious strand extension products. On the other hand, includi

of a step that uses the discretionary power of nucleic acid hybridization can limit or even obviate the need for primer specificity. For example, an entire library of poly A mRNA sequences can be converted into a library of cDNA copies by the use of a universal poly T primer. The library of cDNA strands can then be indiscriminately used as templates for second strand synthesis. Inclusion of a promoter into either the first strand primer (U.S. Patent No. 5,891,636) or second strand primer (Rabbani et al., U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 09/896,897, filed on June 30, 2001) (both documents incorporated by reference) allows synthesis of multiple RNA copies of each individual original mRNA. When either this product or a cDNA copy is labeled, hybridization with a microarray of nucleic acids can be used to determine the amounts of any particular species in the original sample. The present invention can be employed with such methods by including first and second energy transfer elements in primers, nucleotides, probes, nucleic acid binding agents or the matrix itself.

[0164] On the other hand, the nucleic acids of interest may be supplied by the user in known quantity and the embodiments of the various invention disclosed above may be used to synthesize labeled probes. For instance, a single purified species of a nucleic acid of interest might be provided as a template for labeling reactions with one or two primers. When a discrete group of varied nucleic acids is desired to be labeled, the primer sets can be expanded accordingly. Labeled probes can then be created by inclusion of first and second energy transfer elements by any of the means disclosed previously. These probes can then be used to identify the presence or quantity of unlabeled nucleic acids in samples in any of a variety of formats that are well known to those skilled in the art.

#### *h. Analytes as primer extension substrates*

[0165] It should also be noted that the nucleic acids of interest or copies of the nucleic acids of interest may also be used directly in strand extension reactions either as substrates for terminal transferase addition, ligation or by acting as primers. For example, terminal transferase can be used for the template independent addition of first energy transfer elements onto the 3' ends of either individual nucleic acids or a library of nucleic acids. Second energy transfer elements can then be included as part of the terminal addition reaction or they can comprise primers, probes, nucleic acid binding agents or solid supports. In another illustrative example, restriction digestion of DNA can be followed by terminal addition of a mixture of nucleotides with first and second energy transfer elements. Various individual species of nucleic acids can then be hybridized to various capture sequences on discrete loci of an array to measure the presence or amount of individual labeled sequences.

[0166] It is also a subject of the present invention that analytes or copies of analytes can be used as primers in template dependent labeling reactions. In this context, incorporation in itself may be used as an assay since template directed synthesis should be dependent upon the presence of discrete sequences in the analytes that correspond to their complements in appropriate hybridized templates. Thus a desired nucleic acid sequence can be specifically labeled in the presence of other nucleic acids that may be present in a mixture. Although at least one segment of the template is designed to match the desired analyte sequence, the segment of the template that is used direct the sequences added onto the analyte can be either a natural sequence or an arbitrary sequence.

[0167] As an illustrative example of this method, a library of polyA mRNA can be labeled in the presence of total RNA by using a probe that comprises a first segment that comprises Poly T and a second segment that can be used as a template. When bound to the poly A sequences of the mRNA through the first segment, the 3' end of the mRNA can be extended using the second segment as a template. The nucleotides that are incorporated using the second segment as a template can be either labeled or unlabeled. Examples of artificial sequences that may find use as second segments can include primer binding sites, RNA promoter sequences. Another illustrative example is a series of probes that comprise first segments complementary to the 3' ends of discrete bacterial RNA species. For each particular species-specific segment, a discrete template sequence can be used. After specific priming by the RNA present in a sample, evaluation can be carried out with an array that has capture sequences complementary to the extended sequences thereby separating out the individual extended RNAs. And lastly, cDNA copies can be made from a pool of mRNA using standard techniques. Each cDNA that represents a full copy of the original mRNA should have a discrete 3' end that represents the 5' end of the original mRNA. Template/Probes could then be used for each cDNA that is desired to be quantified. In these illustrative examples of using an analyte as a primer in template dependent extensions, labeling may take place by incorporation of a single labeling species as described in previous art or the methods that have been disclosed above may be employed using first and second energy transfer elements.

### *11. Fragmentation and/or Incorporation of Desirable Nucleic Acid Segments*

#### *a. Template dependent addition of desirable nucleic acid sequences to the ends of analytes*

[0168] It is another aspect of the invention to provide novel compositions and methods for the template dependent addition of desirable nucleic acid sequences to analyte or target nucleic acids. In prior art, poly A sequences have



been relied upon as the basis for most methods of manipulation of mRNA. Furthermore, the utility of mRNA has derived from its use as a template to carry out any and all such manipulations. For instance, Poly A has been used as a primer binding site for making cDNA copies and carrying out linear or exponential amplification of mRNA. However, as described previously, this feature is not universally shared among all RNA targets. Furthermore, it is a selective feature for the 3' end of mRNA. In contrast to this art, the present invention overcomes the limited scope of analysis of nucleic acids by viewing and using an analyte or target nucleic acid not as a template but as a substrate for strand extension, i.e. as a primer. As such, the nucleic acid constructs that are provided for these processes are not used as primers but rather they serve as templates to enable analyte or target nucleic acids to incorporate any arbitrary sequence that is desired by the user. Such sequences can comprise promoters, primer binding sites or signal generating moieties.

[0169] In the present invention, methods that may be directed for use with nucleic acid analytes may also be used with any desirable nucleic acid target as well. Analytes can comprise single desirable sequences or they may be a library of various sequences. Analyte or target nucleic acids may be comprised of RNA or DNA as well as copies of RNA or DNA. The analyte or targets nucleic acids may be extracted from biological samples or they may have been produced in vitro. They may also have undergone procedures and processes such as digestion, fragmentation, amplification, extraction and separation.

[0170] The present invention discloses that the ends of nucleic acids can be hybridized to complementary chimeric nucleic acid constructs (CNACs) that comprise two segments. The first segment comprises nucleotides or nucleotide analogues that are capable of binding or hybridizing to the 3'-ends of the analytes. The second segment comprises nucleotides or nucleotide analogues that can be used as a template for extension of the 3' end of the analyte. In contrast to prior art, methods are disclosed that do not rely upon the presence of a selected sequence such as a poly A segment at the ends of the analyte, but rather the present invention discloses methods where any and all sequences that may be present at the 3' end of an analyte or library of analyte are sites for binding and template-dependent extension reactions. In the present invention, template-dependent strand extension can take place either by incorporation of individual nucleotides (polymerization) or by addition of pre-synthesized oligonucleotides (ligation). It should be pointed out that although the inventions are commonly described in terms of 3' extension since this is a characteristic of polymerase driven processes, when ligation is used instead, the 5' end is also a suitable substrate for template dependent strand extension. The ability to introduce arbitrary nucleic acid sequences into the 3' end of a target or analyte nucleic acid provides a simple and powerful vehicle for transforming an analyte into a probe or a nucleic acid construct that could be used for further manipulations. A library of nucleic acids with various sequences can also be converted into a library with universal sequences that could be later used for further manipulation directly in a controlled and measured manner for signalling purposes, priming events, capture events or amplification events.

[0171] In one particular embodiment of the present invention, a set of CNACs is used where the first segment comprises all the potential permutations of nucleotide sequences. Thus, if the first segments of the set of CNACs comprise 6 variable nucleotides, the first nucleotide ( $N_1$ ) can be G, A T or C, the second nucleotide ( $N_2$ ) can be G, A T or C etc. and the set itself will comprise  $4^6$  (4,096) different CNACs. In this sense, it has similarity to the use of random primers for synthesis of nucleic acid copies. However the present invention differs from random priming in that the CNACs are not extended themselves (i.e., act as primers) but provide complementary binding to the analytes such that the second segment of the CNAC can be used for template dependent extension of the analyte. For this purpose, it is preferred that the ends of the CNACs be blocked. Thus although the present invention uses random sequences, the side reaction of random primers using each other as primers and templates is completely avoided. The present invention also differs in that the binding of random primers to any particular site of an analyte allows an extension event. In the present invention, it is only when the CNAC binds to a complementary sequence at the end of an analyte that an extension event takes place. Although, there will be random binding and disassociation of the CNACs at multiple sites on the analyte strands, this is not a true equilibrium situation since there is actually a dynamic favoring of binding to the ends. For instance, juxtaposition of a 3'OH in the analyte and a complementary CNAC can bind a polymerase and form a complex that would be more stable than a CNAC bound to an internal site. In addition to providing a longer half-life of binding of the CNAC to the terminus by complex formation, the complex generates an even more stable form by extending the analyte, thereby increasing the number of bases that are complementarily base paired. This disequilibrium can be carried out in an isothermal reaction, or if preferred, the reaction temperature can be raised to promote dissociation of CNACs from non-productive binding sites followed by a return to the same reaction temperature to promote another round of binding of CNACs to analytes. If desired, these variable conditions can be recycled multiple times to optimize the amount of analyte ends that undergo template-dependent addition.

[0172] It is a further objective of the present invention to disclose novel compositions and methods that utilize CNACs synthesized with universal bases i.e., bases that can base pair with more than one complementary base. Nucleotides or nucleotide analogues that comprise universal bases can contribute stability without adding complexity. Therefore, in this aspect of the present invention, a novel CNAC is disclosed that comprises two segments as described above, but instead of using permutations of nucleotides, universal bases that lack sequence specificity are used in the first segment. For instance, an example was given above with a set of CNACs that comprised permutations in 6 positions

thus requiring 4,096 different CNACs. By the use of universal bases, only a single CNAC species is required for providing template-dependent addition of desirable nucleic acid sequences to any analytes or set of analytes irrespective of the sequences at their ends. Since universal bases do not always display a complete lack of discrimination and the ability to bind to a particular nucleotide, it would be possible and even desirable to use a set of CNACs that comprise different universal bases or universal base analogs, or different mixtures of universal bases and universal base analogs.

As described previously, this method can involve a self-selecting process where CNACs undergo a series of binding and dissociation events of the universal bases to random segments of the analytes until the CNAC binds to a 3' end. In this particular embodiment, base pairing at the end is not a problem since each CNAC possesses universal base pairing capability and productive extension should be mostly related to the relationship between the 3' end of the analyte and the second segment of the CNAC. Efficient strand extension can take place where the beginning of the second segment of the CNAC is aligned with the 3' end of the analyte such that the first base synthesized will be the complement of the first base of the second segment. On the other hand, universal bases also have some capacity for use as templates and as such, hybrids where the 3' end of the analyte is not perfectly adjacent to the junction between the first and second segments of the CNAC should also be able to carry out strand extension of the analyte.

[0173] It is a further objective of the present invention to disclose novel compositions and methods where CNACs comprise universal bases in combination with permutations of nucleotides. In this particular embodiment, the CNAC can be considered to comprise three different segments wherein a first segment comprises universal bases, a second segment represents permuted series of discrete nucleotides at one or more positions and the third segment comprises a nucleic acid that can be used as a template for extension of 3' ends. Thus the present invention should be able to enjoy the stability without complexity of the universal bases in the first segment in conjunction with selectivity and further stability contributed by specific base pairing by a permutational second segment anchor. Thus, if a universal base used in the first segment of a CNAC has approximately half of the binding affinity as a base pairing between normal nucleotides, a set of CNACs that comprised 4 variable nucleotide positions and 4 universal bases would have the same average  $T_m$  as random hexamers, but would require only  $4^4$  or only 256 different CNACs. This is compared to the 4,096 different CNACs required with a hexamer permutational first segment. Similarly a CNAC with 4 universal bases and 6 variable positions would comprise 4,096 different CNACs but would have binding properties analogous to CNACs with random octamer first segments that would require  $4^8$  permutations (i.e. 65,536 different CNACs).

[0174] Therefore, one would cover all possible permutational combinations that could exist in the terminal end of any analyte regardless of its derivation, while at the same time enjoying reasonably high binding efficiency and capabilities because the universal sequences in the first segment provide the additional binding stability without imposing any further specificity. Thus for the same number of CNAC molecules in a reaction mixture, there would effectively be a 16 times higher concentration of CNACs that could bind to a particular 3' end of an analyte in the examples cited above. This should provide superior kinetics and efficiency compared to CNACs with only permutational segments.

[0175] Universal bases, i.e., bases that can base pair with more than one complementary base, were first used in oligonucleotides to maintain stable hybridization with target nucleic acids that had ambiguity in the identity of their nucleotide sequence. A well-known example of this is the substitution of inosine in PCR primes (Liu and Nichols, (1994) *Biotechniques* 16; 24-26). Inosine has the property of being able to base pair efficiently with either G, A, T or C in a complementary strand (Kawase et al., 1986, *Nucl. Acids Res.* 19; 7727-7736). The melting temperature is less than a normal base pairing but still higher than a mismatch. When used as a template, inosine is recognized as if it was effectively G and a C is preferentially incorporated into the complementary copy. Other analogs of nucleotides that can act as universal bases have also been described. For instance, 5-nitroindolenine and 3-nitopyrrole analogues have also been described as universal bases (Loakes and Brown, 1994, *Nucl. Acids Res.* 22; 4039-4043, Nichols et al., 1994, *Nature* 369; 492-493 both of which are incorporated by reference). The use of these and other universal bases are reviewed by Loakes (2001) in *Nucl. Acids Res.* 29; 2437-2447 (incorporated by reference). The ability of universal bases to add stability without adding to the complexity of primers has been described by Ball et al., (1998, *Nucl. Acids Res.* 26; 5225-5227, incorporated by reference) where the addition of 5-nitroindolenine residues at the 5' end, improved the specificity and signal intensity of octamer primers used for cycle sequencing. Thus, these and other universal bases may all find use in the present invention.

[0176] As described above, the present invention allows any nucleic acid or nucleic acid fragment to be used for template-dependent extension and obviates dependency upon poly A tails. The desirable nucleic acid (or nucleic acid of interest) that is incorporated into an analyte strand can transform any nucleic acid or nucleic acid fragment into a form that provides a primer binding sequence that can carry out functions previously enjoyed by polyadenylated nucleic acids. Linear amplification can be carried out by incorporating a promoter as the desirable nucleic acid (or nucleic acid of interest) in a CNAC and exponential amplification can be carried out with desirable primer binding nucleic acid sequences using any of the methods previously described for poly A targets. Additionally, it is contemplated that template-dependent incorporation of a nucleic acid into an analyte also presents the opportunity to directly label the analyte or analytes by using a labeled nucleotide or oligonucleotide in the incorporation step.

[0177] Research studies have had a focus on poly A mRNAs due to its accessibility and convenience as a substrate.



The present invention allows non-polyadenylated nucleic acids to be manipulated with the same ease of use previously accorded to poly A mRNA. Thus, the present invention can be used with DNA, hnRNA, snRNA, tRNA, rRNA, bacterial mRNA or any RNA lacking a poly A sequence. Even poly A mRNA may find use with the present invention. The reliance upon the 3' poly A tail has led to a bias towards the information contained in this end. In most methods of prior art, sequences at the other end of mRNA were still dependent upon the efficiency with which a priming event at the 3' took place. Accordingly, any interruptions in the copying process or a scission between the 5' end and the poly A end reduced the amount of 5' sequences that were available for study or manipulation. Thus, even a single nick in a large mRNA molecules eliminated the use of the 5' end of the molecule and numerous reports and even commercial products are dedicated towards the preservation of the continuity between the 5' and 3' ends of mRNA during its isolation. Since the present invention discloses methods that are independent of poly A, fragments of poly A RNA that have become separated from the poly A region remain available for use and study.

[0178] In fact, such a fragmentation process can be advantageous since all segments of the poly mRNA can be independently and efficiently used with no bias derived from their relationship to the 3' end. This fragmentation will be especially useful for hnRNA which has remained an underutilized area of research. This neglect has stemmed from two characteristics of hnRNA: the lack of poly A as a handle and the very large average size. Although the introns that are present in hnRNA lack coding sequences for the final gene product, there are likely to be a large number of sequences that do not appear in the final product that are important in control, regulation and interaction with other genes and gene products. The present invention will allow the sequences present in hnRNA to be as completely accessible as the polyA mRNA sequences had been previously.

[0179] Although many of the embodiments of the present invention are described in terms of RNA analytes, it should be pointed out that many of these processes can easily be applied to DNA fragments as well. Methods that can be used for the fragmentation processes described above can be physical or enzymatic. Physical means can encompass any chemical process as well as mechanical shearing and sonication. Enzymatic processes for fragmentation that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to endonucleases such as S1 nuclease, mung bean nuclease, RNase, DNase and restriction enzymes. It is a further point of the present invention that analytes can be treated with phosphatases if required, to provide an extendable 3' end. The CNAC of the present invention can comprise DNA, RNA or any combination thereof and the nucleotides may be modified or unmodified as desired. The CNACs may comprise standard nucleotides or they may comprise nucleotide analogs, sugar analogs and phosphate analogs. Examples of each of these are peptide nucleic acids (PNAs), arabinosides and phosphorothioate linkages.

#### ***b. CNAC for site specific fragmentation***

[0180] The utility of universal bases to providing stability without adding complexity finds application in other processes as well. Another aspect of the present invention discloses compositions and methods for controlled fragmentation of an analyte or library of analytes. A novel CNAC is disclosed that comprises two segments, a first segment that comprises universal nucleotides to provide non-specific binding and a second segment with a discrete selected sequence that will generate a complex that provides endonucleolytic digestion. Under appropriate hybridization conditions, the CNAC will create an endonuclease susceptible site at each location in the analyte that is sufficiently complementary to the second segment of the CNAC. The size and nature of the selected sequence will determine the average spacing between endonuclease sites and therefore the particular average size of fragments. For example, a CNAC that comprises a second segment with 4 or more deoxyribonucleotides should form a complex that is a substrate for RNase H. This should lead to a scission at each site in the analyte that is complementary to the second segment. On average, a given 4 base sequence should appear about every 250 bases. A smaller size distribution can also be obtained by the use of more than one CNAC thereby increasing the number of potential digestion sites. If preferred, a larger second segment can be used and hybridization/digestion conditions applied such that the complex is formed at more infrequent intervals and hence a larger average distribution in fragment sizes. Specificity may also be increased by the addition of discrete bases in either the first or third segments and using conditions such that stable hybrids are only formed with stability generated by proper base pairing of these bases as well.

[0181] The same method can also be applied to digestion of single-stranded DNA. The second segment of a CNAC can be designed with a recognition site for a restriction enzyme. Since most restriction sites are only 4 to 6 bases, the presence of the universal bases in the CNAC should provide a much more stable hybrid than using a 4 to 6 base segment alone. Although in this particular embodiment of the present invention, the second segment is used for fragmentation, it may also be used as a template for strand extension for incorporation of a desirable nucleic acid sequence into a fragmented analyte after endonucleolytic digestion. As described previously, this can provide a means for template-dependent incorporation of a labeled nucleotide or oligonucleotide to label the analyte fragments at their terminus.

[0182] If preferred, the CNAC disclosed above can further comprise a third segment. For instance, the third segment can comprise another set of universal bases flanking the other side of the discrete bases in the second segment. This

CNAC could be represented by the formula " $U_n-D_p-U_q$ " where the "n" represents the number of universal bases in the first segment, "p" represents the number of discrete bases in the second segment and "q" represents the number of universal bases in the third segment. The additional third segment can provide additional stability or it may make the hybridized second segment a more efficient enzyme substrate for endonucleolytic digestion. Alternatively, the first and second are as described above and the third segment is a discrete nucleic acid sequence that provides a template for incorporation of one or more labels or a desirable nucleic acid sequence as described previously. Since the universal bases allow for indiscriminate binding, the reactions can take place under conditions where only hybridization events that include proper alignment with the discrete bases in a CNAC form stable hybrids between the CNAC and the analyte. Alternatively, thermocycling can be carried out to dissociate CNACs that are non-productively bound and allow additional binding events that lead to site-specific fragmentation until substantially all of the desired sites on the analyte have been digested.

### c. CNACs for digestion/extension

[0183] In another aspect of the present invention, novel CNACs are disclosed that comprise at least two segments where the first segment is complementary to a first analyte nucleic acid sequence and the second segment is complementary to a second analyte nucleic acid sequence. The CNAC is designed such that after mixing it with an analyte nucleic acid, hybridization of a first segment to a first analyte nucleic acid sequence forms a first complex that is resistant to a particular endonuclease, while hybridization of a second segment to a second analyte nucleic acid sequence forms a second complex that is a substrate for the endonuclease. Furthermore, the second complex is capable of asymmetric cleavage such that only the analyte strand is subject to nicking or removal of nucleotides by the endonuclease. This treatment generates a new 3' end in the analyte strand that can then be used for the template dependent addition of nucleotides or oligonucleotides to the analyte strand.

[0184] The CNAC may further comprise a third segment that may or may not be complementary to a third analyte nucleic acid sequence. The third segment of a CNAC is distinguished from a second segment in that a third segment does not generate a third complex that is sensitive to endonucleolytic digestion. When the third segment is not complementary to the third analyte nucleic acid sequence, a third complex is never formed. On the other hand, when the third segment is complementary to a third analyte nucleic acid sequence, a third complex is formed, but endonuclease resistance is endowed by any of the means that can be employed to render a first complex resistant. After endonuclease digestion, the sequences in the second and third segments may act as templates for strand extension from a 3' end that has been generated by action of the endonuclease. The strand extension may be carried out by a template-dependent polymerizing enzyme (DNA polymerase or reverse transcriptase), or a template dependent ligation enzyme (DNA ligase). Fragments generated by endonuclease digestion may be further be subjected to kinase or phosphatase treatment, in order to add or remove phosphate groups at the 3' or 5' end as may be desired.

[0185] Analytes that may find use in the present invention can be either be DNA or RNA depending upon the nature of the CNAC and the endonuclease. Sequences in the analytes that may be used in the present invention may be discrete individual sequences, consensus sequences, or generic sequences that are present in all or most of a library of analytes. Examples of RNA that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to hnRNA, rRNA, mRNA, tRNA, or snRNA. Examples of DNA that may find use with the present invention can include but not be limited to chromosomal, single-stranded, plasmid, viral, bacterial DNA. Digestion of the second complex can be carried out by endonucleases such as RNase H and restriction enzymes. Prior to hybridization with the CNAC, the target nucleic acid or analyte nucleic acid may also have undergone pre-treatments including, digestion, fragmentation, extraction and separation. These fragmentation pre-treatments can include physical means, such as shearing, sonication or chemical treatment. Pretreatments may also include endonuclease or exonuclease digestions. Examples of endonucleases that might find use in the present invention for pre-treatment can include but not be limited to S1 nuclease, mung bean nuclease, restriction enzymes, DNase, ribonuclease H and other RNases.

[0186] The various segments of chimeric nucleic acid construct polymer may be comprised of the same or different backbones. For example, a first segment of a CNAC can comprise oligo-ribonucleotides and the second segment can comprise oligo-deoxyribonucleotides. Generally, the sugar-phosphate backbone may comprise a natural element, such as phosphate, ribose, or deoxyribose, or it may comprise analogs of phosphates such as phosphorothioates, or analogs of sugars such as arabinosides. If desired, the 3' or 5' end of a CNAC may be blocked to prevent it from acting as a primer or from participating in ligation. The segments of a CNAC may further be comprised of a synthetic backbone, such as a polypeptide. Any synthetic polymer can be used as backbone as long as bases can be added in the proper orientation so that base pairing can take place. A prominent example of such a synthetic polymer that has this capability and usefulness is a peptide nucleic acid (PNA). The bases may be comprised of natural purine and pyrimidine bases as well as modified versions thereof. The bases may also comprise analogs of natural bases. For instance, the universal bases discussed previously may also find use in this embodiment of the present invention. Different segments of a CNAC may comprise the same or different backbones and comprise any base structures or elements, depending on

the desirable function. Thus, one can construct a desired CNAC from the various components and elements provided above. The particular choice of components will depend upon the nature of the analyte and the endonuclease to be used.

[0187] For example, if the analyte is an RNA molecule, RNase H can be used as the endonuclease when the backbone of the first segment comprises an oligo-ribonucleotide and the backbone of the second segment comprises oligo-deoxyribonucleotides. Consequently, hybridization of the first segment to an RNA analyte creates a double-stranded RNA first complex that is resistant to ribonucleaseH and an RNA-DNA second complex which is a substrate for RNase H activity. Treatment with RNase H would asymmetrically cleave all or some of the portion of the RNA analyte involved in the second complex but leave the RNA-RNA hybrid of the first complex and the second segment of the CNAC intact. As described above, a CNAC may also comprise a third segment. In the example above, if the third segment is complementary to the RNA analyte, the third segment may also comprise an oligo-ribonucleotide such that hybridization to the analyte forms an RNA-RNA hybrid that is resistant to the action of RNase H. Alternatively as described above, the third segment is not complementary to the RNA analyte and no hybrid is formed.

[0188] The choice of the particular endonuclease used to carry out this aspect of the present invention depends upon a number of factors. The primary factor is the nature of the analyte since the endonuclease must be able to utilize the analyte as a substrate for nicking or removal of nucleotides. Secondly, the endonuclease must allow circumstances where such nicking or removal is substantially asymmetric and takes place in the analyte strand. Thirdly, the endonuclease must allow circumstances where a first or third complex can remain substantially resistant to the action of the endonuclease. Lastly, the endonuclease must have sufficient specificity that it acts only upon the portion of an analyte that participates in formation of a second complex with the CNAC. It can be seen that the illustrative example with RNase H described above fulfills all of these criteria.

[0189] Another illustrative example would be to utilize an endonuclease that intrinsically provides an asymmetric cleavage. For example, digestion of double stranded DNA with the restriction enzyme N.BstNB I results in a nick in only one strand 4 bases downstream from the recognition sequence 5' GAGTC 3'. Thus, one could design the second segment of a chimeric nucleic acid construct with an oligo-deoxyribonucleotide sequence that is complementary to this sequence and a first segment that is complementary to sequences that are adjacent to the binding site for the second segment. In such a manner, when a second complex is formed by hybridizing the CNAC to the analyte, the double-stranded DNA is a substrate for this specific restriction enzyme and only the analyte sequence will undergo cleavage. As described previously, the CNAC can comprise a third segment that can serve as a template for introduction of a novel nucleic acid sequence by addition to the 3' end of the nick created by the endonuclease digestion. This example also serves as an illustration that a CNAC can still be considered "chimeric" even when it is a chemically homogeneous molecule. For instance, the CNAC above can be synthesized with three segments that comprise only oligo-deoxyribonucleic acids. In the present invention, this would still be a chimeric molecule since each segment has a different functional property, i.e., the first segment provides complementary base pairing and stability; the second segment provides for endonuclease susceptibility and the third segment provides a template for strand extension. This method may also be combined with other embodiments of the present invention that have been disclosed previously. For instance, a CNAC with two segments can comprise universal bases with specific nucleotides only in the sites that are required for recognition and digestion by the asymmetric endonuclease described above.

[0190] Another illustrative example of how this aspect of the present invention could be carried out would be by the use of an artificial or synthetic second segment where the constituents are modified or comprise analogs. Any such modification or analog may be used for this purpose as long as a) they allow hybridization to occur between the second segment and the analyte b) hybridization with the analyte forms a complex that is susceptible to endonuclease digestion and c) the second segment remains substantially resistant to the action of the endonuclease. For example, a second segment could comprise phosphorothioate linkages between bases. It has previously been shown that when a restriction enzyme site in a double stranded molecule comprises an unmodified segment and a phosphorothioate segment, only the unmodified segment undergoes a cleavage event (U.S. Patent No. 5,270,184 and U.S. Patent No. 5,455,166; incorporated herein by reference). Thus a CNAC with one or more phosphorothioate linkages in a restriction enzyme sequence in a second segment can be hybridized to a complementary segment of an analyte and only the analyte strand should be subject to endonuclease digestion.

[0191] Generally, the third segment may contain any arbitrary sequence segment, either related or non-related to a target nucleic acid. The third segment provides a template upon which the cleaved target nucleic acid or the analyte can act as a primer and thereby allow the introduction of any desirable nucleic acid sequence into an analyte. Through such a template dependent sequence introduction to an analyte, a signaling moiety or other elements such as primer binding sequences can be introduced directly to an analyte. Furthermore, through such a method, universal sequences could be introduced to an analyte nucleic acid that could act at a later stage as a template for the introduction of a universal primer or primer directed promoter system to prepare copies of the analytes as described in U.S. Patent No. 5,891,636 and Rabbani et al., in U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 09/896,897; both of which are incorporated by reference. The fact that nucleic acid fragments can be converted to such a construct through such a method could

provide for an even amplification of nucleic acid libraries without prejudice to 3' end sequences. Further, such a sequence or sequences could be used for priming or capturing events directly or after amplification. Optionally, if endonuclease cleavage does not leave free 3'-OH in the remaining analyte, then the remaining analyte could be treated with phosphatase so that a 3'-OH is generated which can facilitate a priming event. Washing, melting or separation steps can be employed when and where desirable. Generally, with a chimeric nucleic acid construct with three sequence segments, one can introduce at will desired nucleic acid sequences at any location into an analyte nucleic acid sequence, including any possible internal sequence sites.

[0192] The various teachings in the present invention allows introduction of desirable specific sequences in a template directed manner into an analyte and thus empowering the analyte or set of analytes with diverse properties and capabilities including: acting as a probe; as a template; as a primer. The CNAC and/or an analyte labeled by means of a CNAC can be directly or indirectly immobilized onto a solid support which may include: tubes, cuvettes, plates, microtiter wells, beads, magnetic beads, and chips. Methods and compositions for carrying out this particular embodiment are described in U.S. Patent No. 4,994,373; U.S. Patent No. 4,894,325; U.S. Patent No. 5,288,609; and U.S. Patent No. 6,221,581 B1; U.S. Patent No. 5,578,832; and U.S. Patent No. 5,849,480 (all of which are incorporated by reference). This immobilization can take place either before or after strand extension and labeling of an analyte. For instance, such capabilities could be used in nucleic acid array analysis, in which instead of probing the analyte, the analyte acts as a primer on a matrix comprising an array of CNACs that can provide templates for strand extension of diverse analytes. Depending upon the particular embodiment of the present invention, hybridized analytes may be extended directly or undergo an endonuclease step prior to extension. One or more labels or signaling moieties could be incorporated directly or indirectly with such an array to indicate a specific hybridization of analytes to a site on the array.

#### *d. CNAC for partial removal of homopolymeric sequences*

[0193] Another aspect of the present invention discloses novel compositions and methods for the partial removal of a homopolymer sequence. Homopolymeric sequences are naturally present in poly A messenger RNA and are artificially present in many methods used for cloning. An example of the latter is poly C and poly G tailing of double-stranded cDNA molecules (Okayama and Berg, 1982 Mol. Cell. Biol. 2:161). Although the presence of these homopolymeric tracts provide beneficial effects for universal primer binding and cloning, only a small segment is usually necessary and the presence of large segments may actually be problematic. For instance, in a transcription template made from a cDNA copy of mRNA, long homopolymeric segments may induce premature terminations.

[0194] As such, the present invention discloses a CNAC that comprises two segments. The first segment is complementary to a chosen homopolymeric sequence and is designed such that a complex formed between the homopolymeric sequence and the first segment forms a first complex that is resistant to the action of a particular endonuclease. The second segment also comprises a sequence complementary to the homopolymeric sequence, but forms a second complex that allows endonuclease digestion of the homopolymer. Thus although each of the segments comprise sequences complementary to the same target sequence, they differ in the properties they will confer after hybridization.

[0195] For instance, a CNAC that comprises a first segment made of rU and a second segment comprised of dT can hybridize to any segment of a polyA tail of mRNA. Digestion with RNase H will only eliminate poly A segments hybridized to the second segment. The CNAC can be recycled multiple times either by using thermal cycling or a temperature where the hybridization through a first segment or a segment alone is insufficient for stable hybridization. For instance, a CNAC that is comprised of 10 rU and 10 dT bases would be able to efficiently hybridize to a 20 base poly A segment at 37°C. Elimination of rA bases in this segment through RNase H activity should destabilize the CNAC, enabling it to bind to a new segment. This process should continue until the mRNA molecules have less than 20 rA bases left at their 3' ends. The remaining small poly A segment can then be used as a primer binding site by using appropriate hybridization conditions. If the CNAC or a DNA primer containing oligo T is used for this purpose, it is preferred that the RNase H activity used for the digestion be eliminated prior to priming.

[0196] The CNAC described above for generating resistant and sensitive complexes is meant only to exemplify the present invention and other sizes may be used for first and second segments. For instance, a deoxyribonucleotide segment of four bases have been shown to be sufficient for forming complexes that are substrates for RNase H activity. The size of the segments of the CNAC should be designed such that there is efficient complex formation prior to endonuclease digestion and a sufficient portion of the homopolymeric target remains intact under the condition used for endonuclease digestion.

[0197] Furthermore, the CNACs of the present invention can comprise a third segment that may or may not be complementary to the homopolymeric target sequence. As described previously, if the third segment is complementary, the nature of the endonuclease and third segment is such that a third complex remains resistant to digestion by the endonuclease. The third segment can be homopolymeric or heteropolymeric depending upon its intended purpose. The nucleotides in the various segments of the CNAC may be comprised of natural bases or analogs thereof, universal

bases or combination thereof that may provide either a weaker or strengthened hybrid formation with a desired sequence. For instance, the use of universal bases in a third segment can allow synthesis of a complementary segment that has a weaker than normal binding. Thus, if the new segment on the analyte is desired to be used as a primer binding site, a primer with normal base that were complementary to the primer binding site would have a competitive edge over re-annealing by the universal bases in the CNAC.

[0198] It will be readily appreciated by those skilled in the art that any of the compositions, solid supports, reagents, dyes, primers, nucleic acid constructs, and the like, can be formulated as kits, which can be employed for carrying out any of the processes described or claimed herein, and variations of such processes. For example, kits can be formulated as protein or nucleic acid labeling kits, nucleic acid processing kits, kits for incorporating desired nucleic acid sequences, amplification kits for amplifying targets, analytes and even a library of analytes. Post-synthetic and real time amplification kits can also be formulated from the compositions, solid supports, reagents, dyes, primers, nucleic acid constructs, and the like.

[0199] Specific embodiments of the invention are:

1. A composition of matter comprising at least two parts:

a first part comprising at least one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises

(i) at least one first energy transfer element; and

(ii) nucleic acid sequences which are complementary to sequences in at least a portion of a nucleic acid of interest; a second part comprising at least one second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises:

(i) at least one second energy transfer element; and

(ii) nucleic acid sequences which are identical to nucleic acid sequences in at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest;

wherein said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct does not comprise said second energy transfer element, and wherein said second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct does not comprise said first energy transfer element.

2. The composition of item 1, wherein either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

3. The composition of item 1, wherein said first nucleic acid primer or construct comprises more than one first energy transfer element.

4. The composition of item 1, wherein said second nucleic acid primer or construct comprises more than one second energy transfer element.

5. The composition of item 1, wherein said first part comprises more than one nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or said second part comprises more than one nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or both said first part and said second part comprise more than one nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct.

6. The composition of item 5, wherein said more than one nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprise identical or different nucleic acid sequences.

7. The composition of item 1, wherein said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosin isothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

8. The composition of item 7, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

9. The composition of item 1, wherein at least one of said nucleic acid primers or constructs is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

10. The composition of item 9, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

11. The composition of item 1, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

12 A composition of matter comprising at least two parts:

a first part comprising at least two segments,  
wherein said first segment comprises a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and at least one first energy transfer element, and said second segment comprises primer-extended complementary to at least a portion of a nucleic acid of interest; and  
a second part comprising at least two segments,  
wherein said first segment of said second part comprises a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and at least one second energy transfer element;  
and wherein said second segment of said second part comprises a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence which is identical to at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest;  
wherein said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct does not comprise said second energy transfer element, and wherein said second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct does not comprise said first nucleic acid energy element.

13. The composition of item 12, wherein either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

14. The composition of item 12, wherein said first nucleic acid primer or construct comprises more than one first energy transfer element.

15. The composition of item 12, wherein said second nucleic acid primer or construct comprises more than one second energy transfer element.

16. The composition of item 1, wherein said first part comprises more than one nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or said second part comprises more than one nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or both said first part and said second part comprise more than one nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct.

17. The composition of item 16, wherein said more than one nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprise identical or different nucleic acid sequences.

18. The composition of item 12, wherein said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosin isothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

19. The composition of item 18, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

20. The composition of item 12, wherein at least one of said nucleic acid primers or constructs is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

21. The composition of item 20, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

22. The composition of item 12, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

23. The composition of item 12, wherein said primer extended sequence was added or effected by a DNA polymerase.

24. The composition of item 12, wherein said primer extended sequence was added or effected by a ligase.

25. A composition of matter comprising two nucleic acid strands, wherein the first of said two strands comprises at least one first energy transfer element, and the second of said two strands comprises at least one second energy transfer element and wherein said first strand or a portion thereof is hybridized to said second strand or a portion thereof, and wherein said first strand lacks said second energy transfer element and said second strand lacks said first energy transfer element.

26. The composition of item 25, wherein either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

27. The composition of item 25, wherein said first strand comprises more than one first energy transfer element.

28. The composition of item 25, wherein said second strand comprises more than one second energy transfer element.

29. The composition of item 25, wherein said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

30. The composition of item 29, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

31. The composition of item 25, wherein at least one of said strands is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

32. The composition of item 31, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

33. The composition of item 25, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

34. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) the composition of item 1;
- (ii) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest; and
- (iii) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

(b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii) and (iii) above;

(c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (i) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (i) with the complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;

(d) extending said first nucleic acid primer and said second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if said complementary strand is present;

(e) separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said nucleic acid of interest and separating said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;

(f) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (i) with said nucleic acid of interest or said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (e), and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (i) with said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (e); and

(g) detecting by means of said first and second energy transfer elements in said composition (i) the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest.

35. The process of item 34, wherein said complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest is present.



36. The process of item 34, wherein after said contacting step (f), said process further comprises repeating said extending step (d).
37. The process of item 36, said process further comprising the step (e') of separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, and repeating step (f) thereafter.
38. The process of item 37, wherein steps (d), (e') and (f) are repeated.
39. The process of item 38, wherein said detecting step (g) is carried out at specific intervals during or after said extending step (d), said separating step (e'), or said contacting step (f).
40. The process of items 34, 36, 37 or 38, wherein in the providing step (a), said reagents (iii) comprise DNA polymerase, DNA ligase, or both.
41. The process of item 40, wherein said DNA polymerase, DNA ligase, or both, are thermostable.
42. The process of items 34, 36, 37 or 38, wherein said separating step is carried out by thermal denaturation or strand displacement.
43. The process of item 34, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (ii) has been rendered single stranded before or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).
44. The process of item 34, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.
45. The process of item 34, wherein in said providing step (a), said first nucleic acid primer or construct comprises more than one first energy transfer element.
46. The process of item 34, wherein in said providing step (a), said second nucleic acid primer or construct comprises more than one second energy transfer element.
47. The process of item 34, wherein in said providing step (a), more than one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or more than one second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or both, are provided.
48. The process of item 34, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.
49. The process of item 48, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.
50. The process of item 34, wherein at least one of said first or second nucleic acid primers or constructs is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.
51. The process of item 50, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.
52. The process of item 50, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.
53. The process of items 34, 36, 37 or 38, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.
54. The process of item 53, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.



55. A composition of matter that comprises a nucleic acid strand, said strand comprising two segments, the first segment comprising a primer or a nucleic acid construct; and said second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, wherein said primer or nucleic acid construct comprises a first energy transfer element, and wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises a second energy transfer element, and wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises more than one nucleotide.

56. The composition of item 55, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor.

57. The composition of item 55, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

58. The composition of any of items 55, 56 or 57, wherein said first nucleic acid primer or construct comprises more than one first energy transfer element.

59. The composition of any of items 55, 56 or 57, wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises more than one second energy transfer element.

60. The composition of item 55, wherein said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

61. The composition of item 60, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

62. The composition of item 55, further comprising a second nucleic acid strand, said second strand comprising two segments, the first segment comprising a primer or a nucleic acid construct; and said second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, wherein said primer or nucleic acid construct comprises a first energy transfer element, and wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises a second energy transfer element.

63. The composition of item 55 or 62, wherein at least one of said nucleic acid primers or constructs is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

64. The composition of item 63, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

65. The composition of item 63 or 64, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

66. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises:

- (A) a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest and
- (B) a first energy transfer element;

- (iii) labeled nucleotide or nucleotides comprising a second energy transfer element; and
- (iv) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

(b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) above;

(c) contacting under hybridization conditions said nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said nucleic acid of interest;

- (d) extending said nucleic acid primer by more than one nucleotide, thereby incorporating said labeled nucleotide or nucleotides; and
- (e) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element in said nucleic acid primer and said second energy transfer element in an incorporated nucleotide.

67. The process of item 66, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (i) has been rendered single stranded before or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).

68. The process of item 66, wherein prior to the detecting step (e), said process further comprises the step of (b') separating said extended nucleic acid from the nucleic acid of interest and repeating the contacting step (c) and the extending step (d).

69. The process of item 68, wherein said separating step (b'), said contacting step (c) and said extending step (d) are repeated one or more times.

70. The process of item 66, wherein in the providing step (a), said reagents (v) comprises a thermostable DNA polymerase.

71. The process of item 68 or 69, wherein said separating step is carried out by thermal denaturation or strand displacement.

72. The process of item 66, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

73. The process of item 66, wherein in said providing step (a), said nucleic acid primer or construct comprises more than one first energy transfer element.

74. The process of item 66, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

75. The process of item 74, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

76. The process of item 66, wherein said nucleic acid primer or construct is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

77. The process of item 76, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

78. The process of item 76, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

79. The process of items 66, 68 or 69, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.

80. The process of item 79, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.

81. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;

(iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical to at least a portion of said one strand;  
 (iv) labeled nucleotide or nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element; and  
 (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;  
 wherein (ii), (iii) or both (ii) and (iii) comprise a second energy transfer element;

(b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;  
 (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (iii) with the complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;  
 (d) extending said first nucleic acid primer and said second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if said complementary strand is present, thereby incorporating said labeled nucleotide or nucleotides;  
 (e) separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said nucleic acid of interest and separating said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;  
 (f) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said nucleic acid of interest or said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (e), and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (iii) with said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (e); and  
 (g) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between a second energy transfer element in said first nucleic acid primer, said second nucleic acid primer, or both, and a first energy element in an incorporated nucleotide.

82. The process of item 81, wherein said complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest is present.

83. The process of item 82, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (i) has been rendered single stranded before or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).

84. The process of item 81, wherein after said contacting step (f), said process further comprises repeating said extending step (d).

85. The process of item 84, said process further comprising the step (e') of separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, and repeating step (f) thereafter.

86. The process of item 85, wherein steps (d), (e') and (f) are repeated.

87. The process of items 81, 84, 85 or 86, wherein said detecting step (g) is carried out at specific intervals during or after said extending step (d), said separating step (e'), or said contacting step (f).

88. The process of items 81, 84, 85 or 86, wherein in the providing step (a), said reagents (v) comprise a thermostable DNA polymerase.

89. The process of items 81, 84, 85 or 86, wherein said separating step is carried out by thermal denaturation or strand displacement.

90. The process of item 81, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

91. The process of item 81, wherein in said providing step (a), said first nucleic acid primer or construct comprises more than one first energy transfer element.

92. The process of item 81, wherein in said providing step (a), said second nucleic acid primer or construct comprises more than one second energy transfer element.

93. The process of item 81, wherein in said providing step (a), more than one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or more than one second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or both, are provided.

94. The process of item 81, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

95. The process of item 94, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

96. The process of item 81, wherein at least one of said first or second nucleic acid primers or constructs is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

97. The process of item 96, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

98. The process of item 96, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

99. The process of items 81, 84, 85 or 86, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.

100. The process of item 99, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.

101. A composition of matter that comprises a nucleic acid strand, said strand comprising two segments, the first segment comprising a primer or a nucleic acid construct; and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises one or more first energy transfer elements and one or more second energy transfer elements.

102. The composition of item 101, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor.

103. The composition of item 101, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

104. The composition of item 101, wherein said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

105. The composition of item 104, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

106. The composition of item 101, further comprising a second nucleic acid strand, said second strand comprising two segments, wherein the first segment of said second strand comprises a primer or a nucleic acid construct, wherein the second segment of said second strand comprises a primer-extended sequence, and wherein said primer-extended sequence of said second segment comprises one or more first energy transfer elements and one or more second energy transfer elements.

107. The composition of item 101 or 106, wherein at least one of said nucleic acid primers or constructs is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

108. The composition of item 107, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

109. The composition of item 107, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

110. The composition of item 101 or 106, wherein at least one of said nucleic acid primers or constructs further

comprises a quencher.

111. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest and
- (iii) one or more first nucleotides, said first nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element, and one or more second nucleotides, said second nucleotides comprising a second energy transfer element;
- (iv) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

- (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) above;
- (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said nucleic acid of interest;
- (d) extending said nucleic acid primer, thereby incorporating said first and second nucleotides; and
- (e) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

112. The process of item 111, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (i) has been rendered single stranded before or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).

113. The process of item 111, wherein said first nucleotide and second nucleotide comprise identical bases.

114. The process of item 111, wherein said first nucleotide and second nucleotide comprise different bases.

115. The process of item 111, wherein prior to the detecting step (e), said process further comprises the step of (b') separating said extended nucleic acid from the nucleic acid of interest and repeating the contacting step (c) and the extending step (d).

116. The process of item 115, wherein said separating step (b'), said contacting step (c) and said extending step (d) are repeated one or more times.

117. The process of item 111, wherein in the providing step (a), said reagents (v) comprises a thermostable DNA polymerase.

118. The process of item 115 or 116, wherein said separating step is carried out by thermal denaturation or strand displacement.

119. The process of item 111, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

120. The process of item 111, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

121. The process of item 120, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

122. The process of item 111, wherein said nucleic acid primer or construct is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

123. The process of item 122, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

124. The process of item 122, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

125. The process of items 111, 115 or 116, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.

126. The process of item 125, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.

127. The process of item 111, wherein said nucleic acid primer or construct further comprises a quencher.

128. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;
- (iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical to at least a portion of said one strand;
- (iv) one or more first nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element, and one or more second nucleotides, said second nucleotides comprising a second energy transfer element; and
- (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

- (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;
- (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (iii) with the complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;
- (d) extending said first nucleic acid primer and said second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if said complementary strand is present, thereby incorporating said first and second nucleotides; and
- (e) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

129. The process of item 128, further comprising:

- (b') separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said nucleic acid of interest and separating said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;
- (c') contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (b'), if said second strand is present, and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (iii) with said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (b'); and repeating said extending step (d) thereafter.

130. The process of item 129, further comprising the step (b'') of separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, and the step (c'') of contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (b''), and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (iii) with said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (b''); and repeating said extending step (d) thereafter.

131. The process of item 130, wherein said separating step (b''), said contacting step (c'') and said extending step (d) are repeated.

132. The process of item 128, wherein said complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest is present.

133. The process of item 132, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (i) has been rendered single stranded before

or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).

134. The process of any of items 128, 129, 130 or 131, wherein said detecting step (e) is carried out at specific intervals during or after any contacting step, extending step, or separating step.

135. The process of item 128, wherein in the providing step (a), said reagents (v) comprise a thermostable DNA polymerase.

136. The process of items 129, 130 or 131, wherein said separating step is carried out by thermal denaturation or strand displacement.

137. The process of item 128, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

138. The process of item 128, wherein in said providing step (a), more than one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or more than one second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or both, are provided.

139. The process of item 128, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

140. The process of item 139, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

141. The process of item 128, wherein at least one of said first or second nucleic acid primers or constructs or any primer-extended nucleic acid sequence is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

142. The process of item 141, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

143. The process of item 141, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

144. The process of items 128, 129, 130 or 131, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.

145. The process of item 144, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.

146. The process of item 128, wherein at least one of said nucleic acid primers or constructs further comprises a quencher.

147. A composition of matter that comprises a nucleic acid strand, said strand comprising two or more ribonucleotides, wherein at least one ribonucleotide comprises a first energy transfer element and wherein at least one other ribonucleotide comprises a second energy transfer element.

148. The composition of item 147, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

149. The composition of item 148, wherein said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

150. The composition of item 149, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

151. The composition of item 147, wherein said nucleic acid strand is fixed or immobilized indirectly to a solid support.

152. The composition of item 151, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

153. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) at least one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and optionally, a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, wherein either the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or said optional second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises an RNA promoter sequence;
- (iii) one or more first ribonucleotides, said first ribonucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element, and one or more second ribonucleotides, said second ribonucleotides comprising a second energy transfer element;
- (iv) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension and RNA transcription;

(b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii) and (iii) above;

(c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;

(d) extending said nucleic acid primer to form a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence;

(e) synthesizing a second nucleic acid strand complementary to said primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or a portion thereof, thereby forming a double-stranded nucleic acid;

(f) transcribing said double-stranded nucleic acid formed in step (e) to incorporate said first and second ribonucleotides (iii) into transcripts;

(g) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element;

wherein said transcribing step (f) is carried out by said RNA promoter sequence in either the primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or the second nucleic acid strand synthesized in step (e).

154. The process of item 153, wherein in said synthesizing step (e), the second nucleic acid strand is synthesized by primer extension of RNA fragments produced by the action of RNase H.

155. The process of item 153, wherein in said synthesizing step (e), the second nucleic acid strand is synthesized by primer extension of said optional second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct.

156. The process of item 153, wherein in said synthesizing step (e), the second nucleic acid strand is synthesized by terminal addition or terminal ligation to said primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, which terminal addition or ligation is followed by contacting said terminally added or ligated sequences with one or more of said optional second nucleic acid primers or constructs complementary to said terminally added or ligated sequences, followed by extension of said optional second nucleic acid primers or constructs.

157. The process of item 153, wherein said RNA promoter comprises a T3 promoter, a T7 promoter or an SP6 promoter.

158. The process of item 157, wherein said transcribing step (f) is carried out by a cognate RNA polymerase.

159. The process of item 153, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (i) has been rendered single stranded before or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).

160. The process of item 153, wherein said detecting step (e) is carried out one or more times or at specific intervals.

161. The process of item 153, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is at



energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

162. The process of item 153, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.
163. The process of item 162, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.
164. The process of item 153, wherein said transcripts obtained in step (f) are fixed or immobilized to a solid support.
165. The process of item 164, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.
166. The process of item 164, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.
167. The process of item 153, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.
168. The process of item 167, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.
169. A composition of matter that comprises two parts, wherein the first part is a nucleic acid strand comprising two segments, the first segment comprising a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, and the second segment comprises a primer-extended sequence, and  
wherein the second part comprises a nucleic acid binding agent,  
wherein said nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises one or more fluorescent first energy transfer elements and wherein said nucleic acid binding agent comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.
170. The composition of item 169, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor.
171. The composition of item 169, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.
172. The composition of item 169, wherein said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.
173. The composition of item 172, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.
174. The composition of item 169, wherein said nucleic acid binding agent comprises a protein or a polypeptide.
175. The composition of item 174, wherein said protein or polypeptide comprises T4 gene 32 protein, SSB protein or antibodies.
176. The composition of item 169, wherein said nucleic acid binding agent comprises a single strand nucleic acid binding dye.
177. The composition of item 169, wherein said nucleic acid strand is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.
178. The composition of item 177, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

179. The composition of item 177, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

180. A composition of matter that comprises

- (a) two nucleic acid strands, wherein at least one of said strands comprises two segments, the first segment comprising a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, and
- (b) a nucleic acid binding agent,

wherein said nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises one or more fluorescent first energy transfer elements and wherein said nucleic acid binding agent comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

181. The composition of item 180, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor.

182. The composition of item 180, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

183. The composition of item 180, wherein said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

184. The composition of item 183, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

185. The composition of item 180, wherein said second strand comprises two segments, the first segment comprising a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence.

186. The composition of item 185, wherein said second primer or nucleic acid construct comprises one or more first energy transfer elements.

187. The composition of item 180, wherein said nucleic acid binding agent comprises a protein or a polypeptide.

188. The composition of item 187, wherein said protein or polypeptide comprises histones or antibodies.

190. The composition of item 180, wherein said nucleic acid binding agent comprises an intercalator.

191. The composition of item 190, wherein said intercalator comprises SYBR green I, ethidium bromide, a homodimer or a heterodimer that comprises ethidium bromide or derivatives.

192. The composition of item 180, wherein at least one of said nucleic acid strands is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

193. The composition of item 192, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

194. The composition of item 192, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

195. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises

- (A) a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest; and
- (B) one or more fluorescent first energy transfer elements;

- (iii) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more second energy transfer elements;
- (iv) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

- (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) above;
- (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said nucleic acid of interest;
- (d) extending said nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct to form a primer-extended sequence;
- (e) binding said nucleic acid binding agent (iii) to said primer-extended sequence or to a complex comprising said nucleic acid of interest and said primer-extended sequence; and
- (f) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

196. The process of item 195, wherein said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (iii) comprises a protein or a polypeptide.

197. The process of item 196, wherein said protein or polypeptide comprises T4 gene 32 protein, SSB protein, histones or antibodies.

198. The process of item 195, wherein said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (iii) comprises a single strand nucleic acid binding dye.

199. The process of item 195, wherein said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (iii) comprises an intercalator.

200. The process of item 199, wherein said intercalator comprises SYBR green I, ethidium bromide, a homodimer or a heterodimer that comprises ethidium bromide or derivatives.

201. The process of item 195, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (i) has been rendered single stranded before or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).

202. The process of item 195, wherein said primer-extended sequence formed in said extending step (d) has been rendered single-stranded prior to said binding step (e).

203. The process of item 195, wherein prior to the detecting step (f), said process further comprises the step of (b') separating said extended nucleic acid from the nucleic acid of interest and repeating the contacting step (c), the extending step (d) and the binding step (e).

204. The process of item 203, wherein said separating step (b'), said contacting step (c), said extending step (d) and said binding step (e) are repeated one or more times.

205. The process of item 195, wherein in the providing step (a), said reagents (iv) comprises a thermostable DNA polymerase.

206. The process of items 202, 203 or 204, wherein said rendering or separating step is carried out by thermal denaturation or strand displacement.

207. The process of item 195, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

208. The process of item 195, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosin isothiocyanate (EI TC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cya

nine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

209. The process of item 208, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

5 210. The process of item 195, wherein said nucleic acid primer or said primer-extended sequence is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

211. The process of item 210, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

10 212. The process of item 210, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

213. The process of items 195, 202, 203 or 204, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.

15 214. The process of item 213, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.

215. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

25 (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;  
(ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;  
(iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical to at least a portion of said one strand;  
(iv) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more first energy transfer elements; and  
30 (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;  
wherein (ii), (iii) or both (ii) and (iii) comprise one or more fluorescent second energy transfer elements;

35 (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;  
(c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (iii) with the complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;  
(d) extending said first nucleic acid primer and said second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is  
40 present;  
(e) binding said nucleic acid binding agent (iv) to a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or to a complex comprising said nucleic acid of interest and a primer-extended sequence; and  
(f) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between a second energy transfer element in said first nucleic acid primer, said second nucleic acid primer, or both, and  
45 a first energy element in said nucleic acid binding agent (iv).

216. The process of item 215, wherein in said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (iv) comprises a protein or a polypeptide.

50 217. The process of item 216, wherein said protein or polypeptide comprises T4 gene 32 protein, SSB protein, histones or antibodies.

218. The process of item 215, wherein said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (iv) comprises a single strand nucleic acid binding dye.

55 219. The process of item 215, wherein said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (iii) comprises an intercalator.

220. The composition of item 219, wherein said intercalator comprises SYBR green I, ethidium bromide, a homodimer or a heterodimer that comprises ethidium bromide or derivatives.

221. The process of item 215, further comprising:

(b') separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said nucleic acid of interest and separating said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;

(c') contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (b'), if said second strand is present, and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (iii) with said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (b'); and repeating said extending step (d) and said binding step (e) thereafter.

222. The process of item 221, further comprising the step (b'') of separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, and the step (c'') of contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (b''), and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (iii) with said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (b''); and repeating said extending step (d) and said binding step (e) thereafter.

223. The process of item 222, wherein said separating step (b''), said contacting step (c''), said extending step (d) and said binding step (e) are repeated.

224. The process of item 215, wherein said complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest is present.

225. The process of item 215, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (i) has been rendered single stranded before or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).

226. The process of items 215, 221, 222 or 223, wherein said binding step (e) is carried out after a separation or denaturation step.

227. The process of any of items 215, 221, 222, or 223, wherein said detecting step (e) is carried out at specific intervals during or after any binding step (e).

228. The process of item 215, wherein in the providing step (a), said reagents (v) comprise a thermostable DNA polymerase.

229. The process of items 215, 221, 222, or 223, wherein said separating step is carried out by thermal denaturation or strand displacement.

230. The process of item 215, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

231. The process of item 215, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA); tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

232. The process of item 231, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

233. The process of item 215, wherein at least one of said first or second nucleic acid primers or constructs or any primer-extended nucleic acid sequence is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

234. The process of item 233, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides,

plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

235. The process of item 233, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

5 236. The process of items 215, 221, 222, or 223, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.

237. The process of item 236, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.

10 238. A composition of matter that comprises

- (a) a nucleic acid strand comprising two segments, said first segment comprising a primer or a nucleic acid construct; and said second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence; and
- 15 (b) a nucleic acid binding agent;

wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises one or more first energy transfer elements, and wherein said nucleic acid binding agent comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

20 239. The composition of item 238, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor.

240. The composition of item 238, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

25 241. The composition of item 238, wherein said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosin isothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

30 242. The composition of item 241, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

35 243. The composition of item 238, wherein said nucleic acid binding agent (b) comprises a protein or a polypeptide.

244. The composition of item 231, wherein said protein or polypeptide comprises T4 gene 32 protein, SSB protein or antibodies.

40 245. The composition of item 238, wherein said nucleic acid binding agent (b) comprises a single strand nucleic acid binding dye.

246. The composition of item 238, wherein said nucleic acid strand (a) is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

45 247. The composition of item 246, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

248. The composition of item 246, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

50 249. A composition of matter that comprises

- (a) two nucleic acid strands, wherein at least one of said strands comprises two segments, the first segment comprising a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, and
- 55 (b) a nucleic acid binding agent,

wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises one or more first energy transfer elements, and wherein said nucleic acid binding agent comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

250. The composition of item 249, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor.
251. The composition of item 249, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.
252. The composition of item 249, wherein said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosin isothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.
253. The composition of item 252, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.
254. The composition of item 249, wherein said nucleic acid binding agent (b) comprises a protein or a polypeptide.
255. The composition of item 254, wherein said protein or polypeptide comprises histones or antibodies.
256. The composition of item 249, wherein said nucleic acid binding agent (b) comprises an intercalator.
257. The composition of item 256, wherein said intercalator comprises SYBR green I, ethidium bromide, a homodimer or a heterodimer that comprises ethidium bromide or derivatives.
258. The composition of item 249, wherein both nucleic acid strands (a) comprise two segments, the first segment comprising a nucleic acid primer or a nucleic acid construct, and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence.
259. The composition of item 258, wherein said primer-extended sequences comprise first energy transfer elements.
260. The composition of item 249, wherein at least one of said nucleic acid strands (a) is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.
261. The composition of item 260, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.
262. The composition of item 260, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.
263. The composition of item 249, wherein said nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct further comprises a quencher.
264. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:
- (a) providing
    - (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
    - (ii) at least one nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct complementary to at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest;
    - (iii) labeled nucleotide or nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element;
    - (iv) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more second energy transfer elements; and
    - (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;
  - (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;
  - (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said nucleic acid of interest;
  - (d) extending said nucleic acid primer, thereby incorporating said labeled nucleotide or nucleotides;

- (e) binding said nucleic acid binding agent to said primer-extended sequence; and
- (f) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

5 265. The process of item 264, wherein said providing step (a), there is at least other nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct complementary to a different portion of said nucleic acid of interest.

266. The process of item 264, wherein said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (iv) comprises a protein or a polypeptide.

10 267. The process of item 266, wherein said protein or polypeptide comprises T4 gene 32 protein, SSB protein, histones or antibodies.

268. The process of item 264, wherein said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (iv) comprises a single strand nucleic acid binding dye.

269. The process of item 264, wherein said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (iv) comprises an intercalator.

20 270. The process of item 269, wherein said intercalator comprises SYBR green I, ethidium bromide, a homodimer or a heterodimer that comprises ethidium bromide or derivatives.

271. The process of item 264, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (i) has been rendered single stranded before or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).

25 272. The process of item 264, wherein prior to the detecting step (f), said process further comprises the step of (b') separating said extended nucleic acid from the nucleic acid of interest and repeating the contacting step (c), the extending step (d) and the binding step (e).

30 273. The process of item 264, wherein said separating step (b'), said contacting step (c), said extending step (d) and said binding step (e) are repeated one or more times.

274. The process of items 264, 272 or 273, wherein said primer-extended sequence formed in said extending step (d) has been rendered single-stranded prior to said binding step (e).

35 275. The process of item 264, wherein in the providing step (a), said reagents (v) comprises a thermostable DNA polymerase.

40 276. The process of items 272 or 273, wherein said separating step is carried out by thermal denaturation or strand displacement.

277. The process of item 264, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

45 278. The process of item 264, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

50 279. The process of item 278, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

55 280. The process of item 264, wherein said nucleic acid primer, said nucleic acid construct or said primer-extended sequence is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

281. The process of item 280, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides,



plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

282. The process of item 280, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

5 283. The process of items 264, 272 or 273, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.

284. The process of item 283, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.

10

285. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing:

15

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;
- (iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical to at least a portion of said one strand;
- (iv) one or more labeled nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element;
- (v) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more second energy transfer elements; and
- (vi) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

20

25

- (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v) and (vi) above;
- (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (iii) with the complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;
- (d) extending said first nucleic acid primer and said second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is present, thereby incorporating said labeled nucleotide or nucleotides;
- (e) binding said nucleic acid binding agent (v) to said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, and to said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is present; and
- (f) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

35

286. The process of item 285, wherein in said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (v) comprises a protein or a polypeptide.

40

287. The process of item 286, wherein said protein or polypeptide comprises T4 gene 32 protein, SSB protein, histones or antibodies.

288. The process of item 285, wherein said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (v) comprises a single strand nucleic acid binding dye.

45

289. The process of item 285, wherein said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (v) comprises an intercalator.

50

290. The composition of item 289, wherein said intercalator comprises SYBR green I, ethidium bromide, a homodimer or a heterodimer that comprises ethidium bromide or derivatives.

291. The process of item 285, further comprising:

55

- (b') separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said nucleic acid of interest and separating said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;
- (c') contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (b'), if said second strand is present, and contacting

under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (iii) with said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (b'); and repeating said extending step (d) and said binding step (e) thereafter.

292. The process of item 291, further comprising the step (b'') of separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, and the step (c'') of contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (b''), and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (iii) with said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (b''); and repeating said extending step (d) and said binding step (e) thereafter.

293. The process of item 292, wherein said separating step (b''), said contacting step (c''), said extending step (d) and said binding step (e) are repeated.

294. The process of item 285, wherein said complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest is present.

295. The process of item 285, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (i) has been rendered single stranded before or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).

296. The process of any of items 285, 291, 292 or 293, wherein said detecting step (e) is carried out at specific intervals during or after any binding step (e).

297. The process of item 285, wherein in the providing step (a), said reagents (v) comprise a thermostable DNA polymerase.

298. The process of items 291, 292 or 293, wherein said separating step is carried out by thermal denaturation or strand displacement.

299. The process of item 285, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

300. The process of item 285, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

301. The process of item 300, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

302. The process of item 285, wherein at least one of said first or second nucleic acid primers or constructs or any primer-extended nucleic acid sequence is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

303. The process of item 302, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

304. The process of item 302, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

305. The process of items 285, 291, 292 or 293, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.

306. The process of item 305, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.

307. A composition of matter that comprises:

(i) a nucleic acid strand, said strand comprising one or more ribonucleotides, wherein at least one ribonucle-

otide comprises a first energy transfer element; and  
(ii) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more second energy transfer elements.

308. The composition of item 307, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor.

309. The composition of item 307, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

310. The composition of item 307, wherein said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosin isothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

311. The composition of item 310, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

312. The composition of item 307, wherein said nucleic acid binding agent (ii) comprises a protein or a polypeptide.

313. The composition of item 307, wherein said protein or polypeptide comprises T4 gene 32 protein, SSB protein or antibodies.

314. The composition of item 307, wherein said nucleic acid binding agent (ii) comprises a single strand nucleic acid binding dye.

315. The composition of item 307, wherein said nucleic acid strand is fixed or immobilized indirectly to a solid support.

316. The composition of item 315, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

317. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) at least one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and optionally, a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, wherein either the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or said optional second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises an RNA promoter sequence;
- (iii) one or more labeled ribonucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element;
- (iv) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising a second energy transfer element;
- (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension and RNA transcription;

(b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;

(c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;

(d) extending said nucleic acid primer to form a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence;

(e) synthesizing a second nucleic acid strand complementary to said primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or a portion thereof, thereby forming a double-stranded nucleic acid;

(f) transcribing said double-stranded nucleic acid formed in step (e) to incorporate said labeled ribonucleotide into labeled transcripts;

(g) binding said nucleic acid binding agent (iv) to said labeled transcripts;

(h) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element;

wherein said transcribing step (f) is carried out by an RNA promoter in either the primer-extended nucleic acid

sequence or the second nucleic acid strand synthesized in step (e).

318. The process of item 317, wherein in said synthesizing step (e), the second nucleic acid strand is synthesized by primer extension of RNA fragments produced by the action of RNase H.

319. The process of item 317, wherein in said synthesizing step (e), the second nucleic acid strand is synthesized by primer extension of said optional second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct.

320. The process of item 317, wherein in said synthesizing step (e), the second nucleic acid strand is synthesized by terminal addition or terminal ligation to said primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, which terminal addition or ligation is followed by contacting said terminally added or ligated sequences with one or more second nucleic acid primers or constructs complementary to said terminally added or ligated sequences, followed by extension of said second nucleic acid primers or constructs.

321. The process of item 317, wherein said RNA promoter comprises a T3 promoter, a T7 promoter or an SP6 promoter.

322. The process of item 317, wherein said transcribing step (f) is carried out by a cognate RNA polymerase.

323. The process of item 317, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (i) has been rendered single stranded before or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).

324. The process of item 317, wherein said detecting step (h) is carried out one or more times or at specific intervals.

325. The process of item 317, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

326. The process of item 317, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosin isothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

327. The process of item 326, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

328. The process of item 317, wherein in said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (iv) comprises a protein or a polypeptide.

329. The process of item 328, wherein said protein or polypeptide comprises T4 gene 32 protein, SSB protein or antibodies.

330. The process of item 317, wherein said providing step (a), the nucleic acid binding agent (v) comprises a single strand nucleic acid binding dye.

331. The process of item 317, wherein said transcripts obtained in step (f) are fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

332. The process of item 331, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

333. The process of item 331, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

334. The process of item 317, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.

335. The process of item 334, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.

336. A composition of matter that comprises a hybridized first and second nucleic acids, said first strand comprising two segments, the first segment comprising a primer or a nucleic acid construct; and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence,  
 said second strand comprising a nucleic acid probe hybridized to said primer-extended sequence or a portion thereof, and  
 wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises one or more first energy transfer elements, and wherein said nucleic acid probe comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

337. The composition of item 336, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor.

338. The composition of item 336, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

339. The composition of item 336, wherein said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA); tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

340. The composition of item 339, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

341. The composition of item 336, wherein at least one of said nucleic acid strands is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

342. The composition of item 341, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

343. The composition of item 341, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

344. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct complementary to at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest;
- (iii) labeled nucleotide or nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element;
- (iv) a nucleic acid probe comprising one or more second energy transfer elements; and
- (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

(b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;

(c) contacting under hybridization conditions said nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said nucleic acid of interest;

(d) extending said nucleic acid primer, thereby incorporating said labeled nucleotide or nucleotides;

(e) separating said primer-extended sequence from said nucleic acid of interest (i);

(f) hybridizing said nucleic acid probe to said primer-extended sequence; and

(g) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

345. The process of item 344, wherein said nucleic acid probe (iv) comprises modified nucleotides or nucleotide analogs.

346. The process of item 344, wherein said nucleic acid probe (iv) comprises ribonucleotides or deoxyribonucleotides; or both.

347. The process of item 344, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (i) has been rendered single stranded before or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).

348. The process of item 344, wherein prior to the detecting step (g), said process further comprises repeating the contacting step (c), the extending step (d), the separating step (e) and the hybridizing step (f).

349. The process of item 348, wherein said contacting step (c), said extending step (d), said separating step (e) and said hybridizing step (f) are repeated one or more times.

350. The process of item 344, wherein in the providing step (a), said reagents (v) comprises a thermostable DNA polymerase.

351. The process of items 348 or 349, wherein said separating step is carried out by thermal denaturation or strand displacement.

352. The process of item 344, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

353. The process of item 344, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

354. The process of item 353, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

355. The process of item 354, wherein said primer-extended sequence or said probe is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

356. The process of item 355, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

357. The process of item 355, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

358. The process of items 344, 348 or 349, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.

359. The process of items 358, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.

360. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing:

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;
- (iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical to at least a portion of said one strand;
- (iv) one or more labeled nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element;
- (v) a nucleic acid probe comprising one or more second energy transfer elements; and
- (vi) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

(b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v) and (vi) above;

(c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one

strand of said nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (iii) with the complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present; (d) extending said first nucleic acid primer and said second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is present, thereby incorporating said labeled nucleotide or nucleotides; (e) separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if produced in step (d); (f) hybridizing said nucleic acid probe (v) to said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, or to said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence; and (g) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

361. The process of item 360, wherein said nucleic acid probe (v) comprises modified nucleotides or nucleotide analogs.

362. The process of item 360, wherein said nucleic acid probe (v) comprises ribonucleotides or deoxyribonucleotides, or both.

363. The process of item 360, wherein said complementary strand of the nucleic acid of interest is present.

364. The process of item 363, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (i) has been rendered single stranded before or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).

365. The process of item 360, further comprising:

(c') contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (e), if said second strand is present, and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (iii) with said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (e); and repeating said extending step (d), said separating step (e) and said hybridizing step (f) thereafter.

366. The process of item 365, further comprising repeating said contacting step (c'), said extending step (d), said separating step (e) and said hybridizing step (f) thereafter.

367. The process of any of items 360, 365 or 366, wherein said detecting step (g) is carried out at specific intervals during or after any hybridizing step (f).

368. The process of item 360, wherein in the providing step (a), said reagents (v) comprise a thermostable DNA polymerase.

369. The process of items 360, 365 or 366, wherein said separating step (e) is carried out by thermal denaturation or strand displacement.

370. The process of item 360, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

371. The process of item 360, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosin isothiocyanate (Eosin), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

372. The process of item 371, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

373. The process of item 360, wherein said primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or said nucleic acid probe is fixed or immobilized to a solid support.



374. The process of item 373, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

375. The process of item 373, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

376. The process of items 360, 365 or 366, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.

377. The process of item 376, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.

378. A composition of matter that comprises a hybridized first and second nucleic acids, said first strand comprising at least one ribonucleotide, wherein said at least one ribonucleotide comprises a first energy transfer element; said second strand comprising:

a nucleic acid probe hybridized to said first strand or a portion thereof,

wherein said nucleic acid probe comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

379. The composition of item 378, wherein said nucleic acid probe comprises modified nucleotides or nucleotide analogs.

380. The composition of item 378, wherein said nucleic acid probe comprises ribonucleotides or deoxyribonucleotides, or both.

381. The composition of item 378, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor.

382. The composition of item 378, wherein said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and wherein said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

383. The composition of item 378, wherein said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamine isothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosin isothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or *p*-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

384. The composition of item 383, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

385. The composition of item 378, wherein said first strand or said nucleic acid probe is fixed or immobilized indirectly to a solid support.

386. The composition of item 384, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

387. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) at least one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and optionally, a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, wherein either the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or said optional second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises an RNA promoter sequence;
- (iii) one or more labeled ribonucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element;
- (iv) a nucleic acid binding probe comprising a second energy transfer element;
- (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension and RNA transcription;

- (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;
- (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;
- (d) extending said nucleic acid primer to form a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence;
- (e) synthesizing a second nucleic acid strand complementary to said primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or a portion thereof, thereby forming a double-stranded nucleic acid;
- (f) transcribing said double-stranded nucleic acid formed in step (e) to incorporate said labeled ribonucleotides (iii) into labeled transcripts;
- (g) hybridizing said nucleic acid probe (iv) to said labeled transcripts;
- (h) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element;
- wherein said transcribing step (f) is carried out by an RNA promoter in either the primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or the second nucleic acid strand synthesized in step (e).

388. The process of item 387, wherein said nucleic acid probe (iv) comprises modified nucleotides or nucleotide analogs.

389. The process of item 387, wherein said nucleic acid probe (iv) comprises ribonucleotides or deoxyribonucleotides, or both.

390. The process of item 387, wherein in said synthesizing step (e), the second nucleic acid strand is synthesized by primer extension of RNA fragments produced by the action of RNase H.

391. The process of item 387, wherein in said synthesizing step (e), the second nucleic acid strand is synthesized by primer extension of said optional second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct.

392. The process of item 387, wherein in said synthesizing step (e), the second nucleic acid strand is synthesized by terminal addition or terminal ligation to said primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, which terminal addition or ligation is followed by contacting said terminally added or ligated sequences with one or more second nucleic acid primers or constructs complementary to said terminally added or ligated sequences, followed by extension of said second nucleic acid primers or constructs.

393. The process of item 387, wherein said RNA promoter comprises a T3 promoter, a T7 promoter or an SP6 promoter.

394. The process of item 387, wherein said transcribing step (f) is carried out by a cognate RNA polymerase.

395. The process of item 387, wherein said nucleic acid of interest (i) has been rendered single stranded before or during said reaction mixture forming step (b).

396. The process of item 387, wherein said detecting step (h) is carried out one or more times or at specific intervals.

397. The process of item 387, wherein in said providing step (a), either said first energy transfer element is an energy donor and said second energy transfer element is an energy acceptor, or said first energy transfer element is an energy acceptor and said second energy transfer element is an energy donor.

398. The process of item 387, wherein in said providing step (a), said first energy element and said second energy element independently comprise fluorescein, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC), 6-carboxyfluorescein (6-FAM), naphthofluorescein, rhodamine, rhodamine 6G, rhodamine X, rhodol, sulforhodamine 101, tetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamineisothiocyanate (TRITC), 4,7-dichlororhodamine, eosin, eosinisothiocyanate (EITC), dansyl, hydroxycoumarin, methoxycoumarin or p-(Dimethyl aminophenylazo) benzoic acid (DABCYL), cyanine dyes, or derivatives of any of the foregoing.

399. The process of item 398, wherein said cyanine dyes or derivatives comprises Cy3 or Cy5.

400. The process of item 387, wherein said transcripts obtained in step (f) or said nucleic acid probes are fixed or immobilized to a solid support.

401. The process of item 400, wherein said solid support comprises beads, tubes, microtiter plates, glass slides, plastic slides, microchip arrays, wells or depressions.

402. The process of item 400, wherein said fixation or immobilization is direct or indirect.

403. The process of item 387, wherein any or all of said steps are carried out in a closed container system.

404. The process of item 403, wherein said closed container system comprises an illumination source and a detection device or unit.

405. A chimeric nucleic acid construct comprising at least two segments, the first segment comprising five or more universal bases and the second segment comprising a nucleic acid template for synthesizing a discrete nucleic acid sequence.

406. The construct of item 405, wherein said discrete nucleic acid sequence comprises at least one primer binding sequence or promoter sequence.

407. The construct of item 406, wherein said primer binding sequence is homopolymeric or heteropolymeric.

408. The construct of item 407, wherein said homopolymeric sequence comprises poly T, poly U, poly G, poly C or poly A.

409. The construct of item 407, wherein said heteropolymeric sequence comprises an RNA promoter sequence.

410. The construct of item 409, wherein said RNA promoter sequence comprises a T3 promoter, a T7 promoter or an SP6 promoter.

411. The construct of item 405, wherein said first segment comprises from about eight to about fifteen universal bases.

412. The construct of item 405, wherein said universal bases comprise inosine, 5-nitroindole or 3-nitropyrrole.

413. The construct of item 405, wherein the 5' end of said first segment is attached to the 3' end of said second segment.

414. A process for incorporating a desirable nucleic acid sequence into an analyte or a library of analytes, said process comprising the steps of:

a) providing

- (i) said analyte or library of analytes;
- (ii) a chimeric nucleic acid construct comprising at least two segments, the first segment comprising five or more universal bases and the second segment comprising a template for synthesizing said desirable nucleic acid sequence; and
- (iii) reagents for carrying out hybridization and template-dependent strand extension;

b) binding or hybridizing said chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) to said analyte or library of analytes (i); and

c) extending the 3' end of said analyte or library of analytes;

wherein said second segment is a template for said extending step (c) when said second segment is in proximity to the 3' end of said analyte or library of analytes.

415. The construct of item 414, wherein the 5' end of said first segment is attached to the 3' end of said second segment.

416. The process of item 414, wherein said desirable nucleic acid sequence comprises at least one primer binding sequence or promoter sequence.

417. The process of item 416, wherein said primer binding sequence is homopolymeric or heteropolymeric.

418. The process of item 417, wherein said homopolymeric sequence comprises poly T, poly U, poly G, poly C or poly A.

419. The process of item 417, wherein said heteropolymeric sequence comprises an RNA promoter sequence.

420. The process of item 419, wherein said RNA promoter sequence comprises a T3 promoter, a T7 promoter or an SP6 promoter.

421. The process of item 414, wherein in said providing step (a), the analyte or library of analytes (i) comprise DNA or RNA.

422. The process of item 421, wherein said DNA comprises chromosomal DNA, episomal DNA or viral DNA.

423. The process of item 421, wherein said RNA comprises mRNA, hRNA, snRNA, rRNA, tRNA or viral RNA.

424. The process of item 414, wherein in said providing step (a), the DNA or RNA is or has been fragmented.

425. The process of item 424, wherein said fragmentation has been carried out by a chemical, physical or enzymatic process.

426. The process of item 425, wherein said enzymatic process is carried out by an endonuclease.

427. The process of item 414, wherein in said providing step (a) the first segment comprises from about eight to about fifteen universal bases.

428. The process of item 414, wherein in said providing step (a) the universal bases comprise inosine, 5-nitroindole or 3-nitropyrrole.

429. The process of item 414, wherein in said providing step (a) the reagents (iii) comprise polymerases or ligases.

430. The process of item 429, wherein said polymerases comprise reverse transcriptases, DNA Pol I or Klenow fragment of Pol I.

431. The process of item 429, wherein said ligases comprise T4 DNA ligase.

432. The process of item 414, wherein said reagents (iii) comprise one or more labeled nucleotides or oligonucleotides.

433. The process of item 414, wherein said binding or hybridizing step (b) is carried at or near a temperature and under conditions sufficient to form a stable complex or hybrid between said chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) and said analyte or library of analytes (i).

434. The process of item 414, further comprising the step (a') of pretreating said analyte or library of analytes with a phosphatase.

435. The process of item 414, wherein said providing step (a), the chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) is incapable of strand extension.

436. A composition comprising a set of chimeric nucleic acid constructs, each such construct comprising at least three segments, the first segment comprising four or more universal bases, the second segment comprising permutations of from one to eight nucleotides, the third segment comprising a template for synthesizing a desirable nucleic acid sequence,

wherein in said second segment, the permutations of from one to eight nucleotides comprise

wherein N independently comprises G, A, T or C, and wherein n is an integer from one to eight.

437. The composition of item 436, wherein in each such construct, the 5' end of said first segment is attached to the 3' end of said second segment, and the 5' end of said second segment is attached to the 3' end of said third segment.

438. The composition of item 436, wherein said desirable nucleic acid sequence comprises at least one primer binding sequence or promoter sequence.

439. The composition of item 438, wherein said primer binding sequence is homopolymeric or heteropolymeric.

440. The composition of item 439, wherein said homopolymeric sequence comprises poly T, poly U, poly G, poly C or poly A.

441. The composition of item 439, wherein said heteropolymeric sequence comprises an RNA promoter sequence.

442. The composition of item 441, wherein said RNA promoter sequence comprises a T3 promoter, a T7 promoter or an SP6 promoter.

443. The composition of item 436, wherein said first segment comprises from about six to about fifteen universal bases.

444. The composition of item 436, wherein said first segment comprises four universal bases and n is 4.

445. The composition of item 436, wherein said first segment comprises four universal bases and n is 6.

446. The composition of item 436, wherein the universal bases in said first segment comprise inosine, 5-nitroindole or 3-nitropyrrole.

447. The composition of item 436, wherein said chimeric nucleic acid constructs are incapable of strand extension.

448. A process for incorporating a desirable nucleic acid sequence into an analyte or a library of analytes, said process comprising the steps of:

a) providing

(i) said analyte or library of analytes;

(ii) a set of chimeric nucleic acid constructs, each such construct comprising at least three segments; the first segment comprising four or more universal bases, the second segment comprising permutations of from one to eight nucleotides, the third segment comprising a template for synthesizing said desirable nucleic acid sequence,

wherein in said second segment, the permutations of from one to eight nucleotides comprise

$(N)_n$

wherein N independently comprises G, A, T or C, and wherein n is an integer from one to eight; and  
(iii) reagents for carrying out hybridization and template-dependent strand extension;

b) binding or hybridizing said chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) to said analyte or library of analytes (i); and  
c) extending the 3' end of said analyte or library of analytes;

wherein said third segment is a template for said extending step (c) when said second segment is hybridized to the 3' end of said analyte or library of analytes.

449. The process of item 448, wherein in said providing step (a), each such construct, the 5' end of said first segment is attached to the 3' end of said second segment, and the 5' end of said second segment is attached to the 3' end of said third segment.

450. The process of item 448, wherein said desirable nucleic acid sequence comprises at least one primer binding sequence or promoter sequence.

451. The process of item 450, wherein said primer binding sequence is homopolymeric or heteropolymeric.

452. The process of item 451, wherein said homopolymeric sequence comprises poly T, poly U, poly G, poly C or poly A.

453. The process of item 451, wherein said heteropolymeric sequence comprises an RNA promoter sequence.

454. The process of item 453, wherein said RNA promoter sequence comprises a T3 promoter, a T7 promoter or an SP6 promoter.

455. The process of item 448, wherein in said providing step (a), the analyte or library of analytes (i) comprise DNA or RNA.

456. The process of item 455, wherein said DNA comprises chromosomal DNA, episomal DNA or viral DNA.

457. The process of item 455, wherein said RNA comprises mRNA, rRNA, snRNA, rRNA, tRNA or viral RNA.

458. The process of item 448, wherein in said providing step (a), the DNA or RNA is or has been fragmented.

459. The process of item 458, wherein said fragmentation has been carried out by a chemical, physical or enzymatic process.

460. The process of item 459, wherein said enzymatic process is carried out by an endonuclease.

461. The process of item 448, wherein in said providing step (a) the first segment comprises from about six to about fifteen universal bases.

462. The process of item 448, wherein in said providing step (a) the first segment comprises four universal bases and n is 4.

463. The process of item 436, wherein in said providing step (a) the first segment comprises four universal bases and n is 6.

464. The process of item 448, wherein in said providing step (a) the universal bases comprise inosine, 5-nitroindole or 3-nitropyrrole.

465. The process of item 448, wherein in said providing step (a) the reagents (iii) comprise polymerases or ligases.

466. The process of item 465, wherein said polymerases comprise reverse transcriptases, DNA Pol I or Klenov fragment of Pol I.

467. The process of item 466, wherein said ligases comprise T4 DNA ligase.

468. The process of item 448, wherein said reagents (iii) comprise one or more labeled nucleotides or oligonucleotides.

469. The process of item 448, wherein said binding or hybridizing step (b) is carried at or near a temperature at which said chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) and said analyte or library of analytes (i) form a stable complex or hybrid.

470. The process of item 448, further comprising the step (a') of pretreating said analyte or library of analytes with a phosphatase.

471. The process of item 448, wherein said providing step (a), the chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) is or has been rendered incapable of strand extension.

472. A chimeric nucleic acid construct that comprises at least two segments, a first segment comprising four or more universal bases; and a second segment which is complementary to a discrete nucleic acid sequence of interest; wherein the 5' end of said first segment is attached to the 3' end of said second segment, and the 5' end of said second segment is attached to the 3' end of said third segment.

473. The construct of item 472, wherein said universal bases comprise inosine, 5-nitroindole or 3-nitropyrrole.

474. The construct of item 472, wherein said first segment comprises from about six to ten universal bases.

475. The construct of item 472, wherein said second segment comprises at least four nucleotides or nucleotide analogs.

476. The construct of item 472, wherein said second segment comprises a recognition sequence for a restriction enzyme.

477. The construct of item 472, wherein said second segment comprises modified nucleotides that render said second segment resistant to said restriction enzyme.

478. The construct of item 472, further comprising a third segment that comprises at least four universal bases.

479. The construct of item 472, further comprising a third segment that comprises a desirable nucleic acid sequence.

480. The construct of item 479, wherein said desirable nucleic acid sequence comprises at least one primer binding sequence or promoter sequence.

481. The construct of item 480, wherein said primer binding sequence is homopolymeric or heteropolymeric.

482. The construct of item 481, wherein said homopolymeric sequence comprises poly T, poly U, poly G, poly C or poly A.

483. The construct of item 481, wherein said heteropolymeric sequence comprises an RNA promoter sequence.

484. The construct of item 483, wherein said RNA promoter sequence comprises a T3 promoter, a T7 promoter or an SP6 promoter.

485. The construct of item 472, wherein said chimeric nucleic acid constructs are incapable of strand extension.

486. A process for cleaving an analyte or a library of analytes at selected sites or sequences, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing:

- (i) said analyte or library of analytes;
- (ii) the composition of item 472;
- (iii) a specific endonuclease;
- (iv) reagents for hybridization and endonucleolytic digestion;

(b) hybridizing said composition (ii) with said analyte or library of analytes (i) to form hybrids between said second segment and said selected sites or sequences in said analyte or library of analyte (i); and

(c) cleaving endonucleolytically said hybrids.

487. The process of item 486, wherein in said providing step (a), the universal bases in said composition (ii) comprise inosine, 5-nitroindole or 3-nitropyrrole.

488. The process of item 486, wherein in said providing step (a), the second segment in the composition (ii) comprises a recognition sequence for a restriction enzyme.

489. The process of item 488, wherein in said providing step (a), the second segment in the composition (ii) comprises modified nucleotides that render said second segment resistant to said restriction enzyme.

5 490. The process of item 486, wherein in said providing step (a), the composition (ii) further comprises a third segment comprising a desirable nucleic acid sequence.

491. The process of item 490, wherein said desirable nucleic acid sequence comprises at least one primer binding sequence or promoter sequence.

10 492. The process of item 486, wherein in said providing step (a) the composition (ii) is or has been rendered incapable of strand extension.

493. The process of item 486, further comprising the step (d) of treating with a phosphatase.

15 494. The process of item 486, wherein said providing step (a) reagents for strand extension are also provided.

495. The process of item 494, further comprising the step of extending a 3' end in the remaining analyte or library of analytes, said 3' end having been produced by said endonucleolytic cleaving step (c).

20 496. The process of item 495, wherein said extending step is carried out in the presence of one or more labeled nucleotides or oligonucleotides.

497. A process for incorporating a desirable nucleic acid sequence into an analyte or a library of analytes, said process comprising the steps of:

25

(a) providing:

- (i) said analyte or library of analytes;
- 30 (ii) a chimeric nucleic acid construct comprising at least two segments, wherein the first of said two segments is complementary to a first analyte nucleic acid sequence and wherein the second of said two segments is complementary to a second analyte nucleic acid sequence;
- (iii) reagents for hybridization and endonucleolytic digestion;
- (iv) an endonuclease; and
- 35 (v) reagents for strand extension;

35

(b) forming a mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv);

(c) hybridizing said chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) with said analyte or library of analytes (i), thereby forming a first complex between said first segment and said first analyte nucleic acid sequence, and a second complex between said second segment and said second analyte nucleic acid sequence; wherein said first complex is resistant to digestion by said endonuclease, and wherein said second complex comprises one or more sites sensitive to endonucleolytic digestion;

40

(d) digesting said second complex with said endonuclease (iv); and

(e) extending the 3'-end of said second analyte nucleic acid sequence, said 3'-end having been generated by said endonuclease (iv),

45

wherein said extending step (e) is carried out by template dependent polymerization or ligation.

498. The process of item 497, wherein in the providing step (a), said analyte or library of analytes (i) comprise DNA, RNA, or a mixture of DNA and RNA.

50

499. The process of item 497, wherein in the providing step (a), said first segment, said first analyte nucleic acid sequence comprises RNA, said second segment comprises DNA, said second analyte nucleic acid sequence comprise RNA and said endonuclease (iv) comprises RNase H.

55

500. The process of item 497, wherein in the providing step (a), said second segment and said second analyte nucleic acid sequence comprise a recognition sequence for an asymmetric restriction enzyme.

501. The process of item 500, wherein said asymmetric restriction enzyme comprises N. BstN B I.



502. The process of item 497, wherein in the providing step (a), said first segment comprises modified nucleotides or nucleotide analogs that confer resistance to digestion by said endonuclease (iv).
503. The process of item 497, wherein in the forming step (b), (i), (ii) and (iii) are mixed together, and then (iv) and (v) are added after said hybridizing step (c).
504. The process of item 497, wherein in the forming step (b), (i), (ii), (iii) and (v) are mixed together, and then (iv) is added after said hybridizing step (c).
505. The process of item 497, wherein said strand extending step (e) also comprises strand displacement.
506. The process of item 497, further comprising the step (f) of carrying out a dephosphorylation step.
507. The process of item 497, wherein said chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) further comprises a third segment complementary to a third analyte nucleic acid sequence, and wherein said hybridizing step (c) further comprises forming a third complex between said third segment and said third analyte nucleic acid sequence, wherein said third complex is resistant to digestion by said endonuclease.
508. The process of item 507, wherein in the providing step (a) said third segment comprises modified nucleotides or nucleotide analogs which confer resistance to digestion by said endonuclease (iv).
509. The process of item 497, wherein said chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) further comprises a third segment non-complementary to said analyte or library of analytes.
510. The process of item 509, wherein said third segment comprises a primer binding site or an RNA promoter sequence.
511. The process of item 497, wherein the providing step (a) said analyte or library of analytes (i) have been fragmented.
512. The process of item 511, wherein said analyte or library of analytes (i) have been fragmented by an endonuclease.
513. The process of item 512, wherein said endonuclease comprises RNase, DNase, S1 nuclease, mung bean nuclease or a restriction enzyme.
514. The process of item 497, wherein said reagents for strand extension comprise one or more labeled nucleotides or labeled oligonucleotides.
515. The process of item 497, wherein said chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) is or has been rendered incapable of strand extension.
516. A chimeric nucleic acid construct that comprises at least two nucleic acid segments, wherein the first segment and the second segment each comprise sequences complementary to different portions of a homopolymeric sequence in a nucleic acid of interest, wherein hybridization of said first segment to a first portion of said homopolymeric sequence produces a first complex; wherein hybridization of said second segment to a second portion of said homopolymeric sequence produces a second complex; and wherein the second portion of the homopolymeric sequence in said second complex is a substrate for a specific endonuclease, and wherein said first complex is resistant to said specific endonuclease.
517. The construct of item 516, wherein said at least two nucleic acid segments comprise ribonucleotides, deoxyribonucleotides or combinations thereof.
518. The construct of item 517, wherein said ribonucleotides or said deoxyribonucleotides comprise modified ribonucleotides, ribonucleotide analogs, modified deoxyribonucleotides, or deoxyribonucleotide analogs.

519. The construct of item 516, wherein the 5' end of said first segment is attached to the 3' end of said second segment.

520. The construct of item 516, wherein said homopolymeric sequence comprises ribonucleotides.

521. The construct of item 517, wherein said first segment comprises ribonucleotides and said second segment comprises deoxyribonucleotides.

522. The construct of item 516, wherein said specific endonuclease comprises Ribonuclease H (RNase H).

523. The construct of item 517, wherein said homopolymeric sequence comprises ribonucleotides, said first segment comprises ribonucleotides, said second segment comprises deoxyribonucleotides, and said specific endonuclease comprises Ribonuclease H (RNase H).

524. The construct of item 517, wherein said homopolymeric sequence comprises oligo A or poly A.

525. The construct of item 516, further comprising a third segment that comprises a desirable nucleic acid sequence.

526. The construct of item 525, wherein said desirable nucleic acid sequence comprises a primer binding sequence or a promoter sequence.

527. The construct of item 525, wherein said desirable nucleic acid sequence comprises one or more universal bases.

528. A process for removing a portion of a homopolymeric sequence from an analyte or library of analytes, said process comprising:

(a) providing:

- (i) said analyte or library of analytes;
- (ii) the construct of item 1;
- (iii) an endonuclease;
- (iv) reagents for hybridization and endonucleolytic digestion;

(b) hybridizing the construct (ii) with said analyte or library of analytes (i) to form at least one second complex comprising the second segment in said construct (ii) hybridized to said portion of said homopolymeric sequence, and at least one first complex comprising the first segment in said construct (ii) hybridized to a different portion of said homopolymeric sequence;

(c) removing endonucleolytically said portion of the homopolymeric sequence hybridized to said second segment in the second complex or complexes.

529. The process of item 528, wherein said at least two nucleic acid segments comprise ribonucleotides, deoxyribonucleotides or combinations thereof.

530. The process of item 529, wherein said ribonucleotides or said deoxyribonucleotides comprise modified ribonucleotides, ribonucleotide analogs, modified deoxyribonucleotides, or deoxyribonucleotide analogs.

531. The process of item 528, wherein the 5' end of said first segment is attached to the 3' end of said second segment.

532. The process of item 528, wherein said homopolymeric sequence comprises ribonucleotides.

533. The process of item 529, wherein said first segment comprises ribonucleotides and said second segment comprises deoxyribonucleotides.

534. The process of item 528, wherein said specific endonuclease comprises Ribonuclease H (RNase H).

535. The process of items 528, 529 or 530, wherein said homopolymeric sequence comprises ribonucleotides, said first segment comprises ribonucleotides, said second segment comprises deoxyribonucleotides, and said specific endonuclease comprises Ribonuclease H (RNase H).

536. The process of item 528, wherein said homopolymeric sequence comprises oligo A or poly A.

537. The process of item 528, further comprising a third segment that comprises a desirable nucleic acid sequence.

538. The process of item 537, wherein said desirable nucleic acid sequence comprises a primer binding sequence or a promoter sequence.

539. The process of item 537, wherein said desirable nucleic acid sequence comprises one or more universal bases.

540. The process of item 528, further comprising the step (d') of treating with a phosphatase.

541. The process of item 528, wherein said providing step (a) reagents for strand extension are provided.

542. The process of item 541, further comprising the step (d) of extending a 3' end in the remaining homopolymeric sequence, said 3' end having been produced by said endonucleolytic removing step (c).

543. The process of item 542, wherein said extending step (d) is carried out in the presence of one or more labeled nucleotides or oligonucleotides.

[0200] The following examples are offered by way of illustration and not by way of limitation to the present invention.

#### **EXAMPLE 1 Preparation of Cy 3 labeling reagent**

##### ***(a) Preparation of Compound I (2,3,3- Trimethylindolinium 5-Sulfone)***

[0201] *P*-Hydrazinobenzenesulfonic acid (250g) was mixed with glacial acetic acid (750 ml) and 3-methyl-2-butanone (420 ml) and heated at reflux for 3 hr. The solution was poured into a 2 L beaker and allowed to cool overnight. The resultant suspension was filtered, washed with acetic acid and lyophilized to remove residual acetic acid. The resultant solid was dissolved in methanol (1.5 L) and a saturated solution of potassium hydroxide in 2-propanol (900 ml) was slowly added. The color of the solution turned progressively lighter as the potassium salt of 2,3,3- trimethylindolinium 5-sulfone precipitated. The precipitate was filtered by suction, washed with 2-propanol and lyophilized to dryness to give 238 g of Compound I.

##### ***(b) Preparation of Compound II***

##### ***(1-Ethyl-2,3,3-Trimethylindolenineninium 5-Sulfone)***

[0202] A portion (78 g) of Compound I synthesized in step (a) was suspended in 1,2-dichlorobenzene (700 ml). Ethyl iodide (250 ml) was added and the mixture was heated at 90-100°C for 12 hr while stirring. The mixture was poured into 3 L of a 1:1 mixture of ethylacetate/ether and stirred for 2 hours. The resulting precipitate was filtered, washed with a 1:1 mixture of ethylacetate/ether and air-dried to give 68 g of product, Compound II.

##### ***(c) Preparation of Compound III (6-Bromohexanoyl Allyl Amide)***

[0203] 6-Bromohexanoic acid (20g) and N-hydroxysuccinimide (15 g) were dissolved in 200 ml of anhydrous dimethylformamide (DMF). Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (22 g) in anhydrous DMF (50 ml) was added and the mixture was left at room temperature overnight. The precipitated urea was removed by filtration and the DMF solution containing the product, N-hydroxysuccinimide-6-bromohexanoate, was cooled to -10 to -20 °C. An equimolar amount of allylamine in H<sub>2</sub>O (11 ml) was first brought to pH 8-9 with glacial acetic acid and then added slowly with stirring to the active ester. Solid sodium bicarbonate (10g) was added slowly to avoid excessive foaming and the mixture was left without covering until the temperature was raised to -10 °C in two hr. The mixture was poured into H<sub>2</sub>O (1L) and the product was extracted twice with chloroform (300 ml). The extracts were washed once with 1 N HCl in H<sub>2</sub>O, once with 5 % NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (300 ml) and three times with 10 % NaCl in water. The chloroform phase was dried by addition of solid MgSO<sub>4</sub> and leaving it overnight under stirring. The chloroform was removed by evaporation under vacuum leaving a liquid that was

used without any further purification for the next step.

**(d) Preparation of Compound IV (addition of Linker arm to Compound III)**

5 [0204] Compound I (11g) from step (a) and Compound III (15 g) from step (c) were dissolved together in 1,2-dichlorobenzene (100 ml) and heated at 110 °C for 12 hours while stirring under argon. The mixture was slowly poured into ethylacetate a 1:1 mixture of ethylacetate/ether (700 ml) and after 30 minutes the solid precipitate was filtered, washed with a 1:1 mixture of ethylacetate/ether, air-dried and set aside. A glassy solid that was formed at the bottom of the flask was crushed in a mortar, triturated with a 1:1 mixture of ethylacetate/ether, filtered, washed with 2-propanol, dried in vacuum and combined with the precipitate from above to give Compound IV which was used without any further purification.

**(e) Synthesis of Cy 3 labeling reagent (Compound V)**

15 [0205] A portion of Compound II (12g) from step (b) and N,N'-diphenylformamidine (10g) in acetic acid (60 ml) were heated at 100-110 °C for 90 min with stirring. During the reaction the absorption at 286 nm and 415 nm was measured. The ratio of 415/286 increased during the first 60 minutes then remained constant at 2.2 for the next 20 minutes. After 90 minutes, the hot mixture was poured slowly into 700 ml of a 1:1 mixture of ethylacetate/ether. The resultant solid precipitate was collected with a pressure filter funnel, washed with 1:1 mixture of ethylacetate/ether and dried by passing argon through the cake. The precipitate was collected from the pressure filter funnel and slowly added to a mixture of 20 6.5 g of Compound IV from step (d), 50 ml of pyridine and 50 ml of acetic anhydride. The progress of the reaction was monitored by the decrease of absorbance at 385 nm and an increase in absorbance at 550 nm. The reaction was carried out overnight under stirring at room temperature. The absorbance at 550 nm increased with time followed by a drop in absorbance as the product precipitated out of solution. At the end of the reaction, the brown precipitate was collected and put aside. The liquid portion was treated by the addition of a seven-fold volume of ethylacetate. The 25 precipitate that formed was collected and combined with the first precipitate. Since pyridine would interfere with a later palladium catalyzed step, any remaining pyridine was removed by dissolving the combined precipitate in 100 ml of 0.5M Triethylammonium carbonate, pH 8.0 (TEAC). The TEAC was then removed by evaporation under vacuum leaving a solid pellet. This product (Compound V) was then dissolved in H<sub>2</sub>O and kept at -70°C until ready to be used.

**EXAMPLE 2 Preparation of Cy 5 labeling reagent (Compound VI)**

30 [0206] Compound II (8 g) from step (b) of Example 1 and malonyl aldehyde dianil hydrochloride (10 g) were dissolved in 100 ml of a 1:1 mixture of glacial acetic acid and acetic anhydride followed by heating at 110 °C for two hours. The mixture was slowly poured into 500 ml of a 1:1 mixture of ethylacetate/ether and the precipitate was filtered, washed with a 1:1 mixture of ethylacetate/ether and dried by argon as above. The precipitate was then slowly added to a mixture of 35 12 g of Compound IV dissolved in 150 ml of a 1:1 mixture of pyridine/acetic anhydride while stirring. The mixture was transferred to an oil bath maintained at 90-100 °C for 30 minutes while continuing to stir. If desired, this step could have been extended up to 90 minutes. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature and the precipitate was processed further as described previously for the Cy 3 labeling reagent in Example 1.

**EXAMPLE 3 Attachment of Cy 3 (Compound V) to dUTP**

45 [0207] Mercurated dUTP (30 umoles) prepared as described in US patent # 5,449,767 was dissolved in 1 ml of 1M Lithium acetate and the Cy 3 labeling reagent (60 umol, 0.6 ml) prepared in Example 1 (Compound V) was added with stirring. Potassium tetrachloropalladate (30 umol in 0.5 ml H<sub>2</sub>O) was added under argon. The reaction was monitored by HPLC and was complete after 1 hr at 40°C. Overnight incubation did not increase the yields. Four volumes of acetone were added to the reaction mixture and left overnight at -20 °C. The next day, the precipitate was collected by centrifugation.

50 [0208] The pellet was dissolved in 0.1M Lithium acetate (pH 4) and loaded onto a DEAE Sephadex A<sub>25</sub> column. The column was developed by passing through a linear gradient of 0.1-0.7 M LiCl in 0.1M Lithium acetate. The fractions were examined by HPLC and the fractions which contained a single late peak were collected and set aside. Another group of fractions exhibited two peaks: the late peak described above and an earlier peak. These fractions were combined, adjusted to 0.1M LiCl, reloaded onto a DEAE Sephadex A<sub>25</sub> column and refractionated as above. Again the 55 fractions containing a single late peak were collected and set aside. Although it was not done in this example, the fractions that contained two peaks after the second chromatography could have been combined and put onto the column another time to increase the yield of the single peak product. The fractions that had exhibited a single late peak by HPLC were combined together and the H<sub>2</sub>O was removed by evaporation in vacuum. The last traces of H<sub>2</sub>O were

removed by resuspension of the semi-solid residue in 50 ml of 100% ethanol followed by evaporation. The alcohol step was repeated once more. The residue was resuspended in 30 ml of ethanol and 1 ml of 3M lithium acetate was added. The solution was mixed well and left overnight at -20°C to facilitate complete precipitation of the Triphosphate. The precipitate was collected by centrifugation, redissolved in H<sub>2</sub>O and partially lyophilized to remove remnants of the ethanol. The amount of product was measured by absorbance at 550 nm and a molar extinction value of 150,000. The solution was then readjusted to a stock concentration of 10 mM and stored at -70°C.

[0209] Although the procedure above describes the preparation of Cy3 labeled dUTP, the same steps could be carried out for the preparation of Cy 5 labeled dUTP by the substitution of the Cy5 labeling reagent (Compound VI from Example 2) instead of the Cy3 labeling reagent (Compound V from Example 1) used in the example above.

**EXAMPLE 4 Preparation of a labeled nucleotide with a rigid arm linker and an aphenylic TAMRA analogue**

**(a) Preparation of Compound VII (3,6-Bis-(Dimethylamino)-Xanthene-9-Propionic acid)**

[0210] 3-(Dimethylamino)phenol (5.8 g) was mixed with succinic anhydride (2.1 g) and heated at 120 °C for 90 minutes with stirring under argon. The mixture was cooled, H<sub>2</sub>O (80ml) was added and the mixture was heated at reflux for 10 minutes. The water phase was discarded, leaving behind a dark brown gummy material. This substance was dissolved by the addition of H<sub>2</sub>O followed by an adjustment to pH 10 with 1M NaOH while stirring. The pH of the clear solution was then brought down to 2 by the addition of 1M HCl. The dye was salted out by the addition of NaCl to a final concentration of 2.5 M. The precipitate was filtered, washed with NaCl (2.5 M) and dried by lyophilization to give 1.2 g of Compound VII. The fluorescence spectrum of Compound VII is shown in Figure 7.

**(b) Preparation of Compound VIII (Active ester of Compound VII)**

[0211] Compound VII from step (a) was dissolved in chloroform (200 ml) and N-hydroxysuccinimide (1.5 g) was added with stirring. After the N-hydroxysuccinimide went into solution, 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl) carbodiimide (2 g) was added and the mixture was stirred overnight in the dark. The mixture was extracted with H<sub>2</sub>O (80 mL) and the chloroform phase containing Compound VIII was dried with anhydrous magnesium sulfate and stored at -20 °C.

**(c) Preparation of Compound IX (Free acid form of glycerylglycine)**

[0212] 13 g of glycerylglycine was suspended in a mixture of an equimolar amount of triethylamine in 300 ml of anhydrous methanol and mixed with a 1.5 molar excess of methyltrifluoro acetic ester. The suspension was refluxed until a homogeneous solution was achieved. The methanol was removed by rotary evaporation and the residue was suspended in 100 ml of H<sub>2</sub>O. The pH was then adjusted to 10.0 to allow the trifluoroglycerylglycine to go into solution. The pH was then brought down to 1-2 with Hydrochloric acid whereupon the free acid form of the trifluoroglycerylglycine precipitated out of solution. This mixture was left overnight at 4°C to allow complete precipitation of the product. The next day, the precipitate (Compound IX) was collected by filtration and then dried.

**(d) Preparation of compound X (NHS ester of glycerylglycine)**

[0213] 15 g of Compound IX from step (c) was dissolved in 100 ml of DMF and a 2 fold molar excess of N-hydroxysuccinimide was added under stirring. A 1.1 fold molar excess of dicyclohexylcarbodiimide dissolved in 10 ml of DMF was then added and the mixture was left overnight at room temperature to produce the NHS ester (Compound X).

**(e) Preparation of Compound XI (dUTP with glycerylglycine linker)**

[0214] 10 uMoles of allylamine dUTP were dissolved in 0.5 ml of 0.3M NaHCO<sub>3</sub> followed by addition of 15 uMoles of Compound X from step (d) and incubation at room temperature for 2 hours to form Compound XI. LiAc was then added to a final concentration of 0.5M and the nucleotide product (Compound XI) was precipitated by addition of 5 volumes of ethanol and leaving the solution overnight at -20°C. The amine was deprotected by dissolving the precipitate in 1 M LiOH for 1 hour at room temperature. The solution was neutralized with glacial acetic acid in the cold and the Triphosphate was precipitated with ethanol as above.

**(f) Preparation of Compound XII (dUTP with tetraglycyl linker)**

[0215] Compound XI from step (e) was further treated by repeating step (e) to add an additional glycerylglycine linker unit thereby forming 5'-allylamido-(tetraglycyl) amine dUTP (Compound XII). The amine was deprotected and the Tri

phosphate precipitated as described above in step (e).

**(g) Preparation of Compound XIII (attachment of a phenyllic TAMRA analogue to dUTP)**

- 5 [0216] 20 umoles of Compound XII from step (f) was dissolved in 2 ml of  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (0.3 M) and LiCl (0.7 M) and cooled on ice. The active ester of the dye (40 umoles) in chloroform from step (b) (Compound VIII) was dried in vacuum and dissolved in DMF (2 ml). This solution was then added to the ice cold dUTP solution and the mixture was stirred in the dark overnight at room temperature. The mixture was diluted with 20 ml water and loaded onto a DEAE-Sephadex  $\text{A}_{24}$  (20 ml) column at 4 °C. The column was washed with TEAC (0.1 M, pH 7.8, 50 ml) and the product was eluted with a linear gradient of 0.1-0.8 M TEAC, pH 7.8. The fractions that were pure by HPLC were combined. The TEAC was removed in vacuum by repeated evacuations following the addition of water. The residue was dissolved in lithium acetate (4 M) and precipitated with 4 volumes of absolute ethanol, then dissolved in water and stored at -70 to give 13.6 mg of Compound XIII.
- 10 [0217] It should be noted that the example cited above used a tetraglycyl rigid arm linker. The same methods that were described above could have been used to synthesize compounds with other lengths. For instance, compound XII (dUTP with tetraglycyl arm) from step (f) could have been manipulated further by a repetition of step (e) and adding another glycyglycine unit thereby creating a hexaglycyl arm. Similarly, the activation steps described for preparation of glycyglycine (steps c and d) could also be carried out with glycine as the starting material thereby allowing addition of single glycy units.

20

**EXAMPLE 5 Preparation of a labeled nucleotide with a rigid linker arm and an aphenylic Texas Red analogue**

**(a) Preparation of Compound XIV (3,6-Bis-Julolidinoxanthen-9-Propionic Acid)**

- 25 [0218] 8-Hydroxyjulolidine (10 g) and succinic anhydride (2.6 g) were combined under argon and heated at 130 °C for 2 hours with stirring. The mixture was cooled,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (150 ml) was added and the mixture was refluxed for 15 minutes and then cooled. The water layer was discarded and the glassy dark brown residue was dissolved by the addition of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  followed by an adjustment to pH 10 with 1M NaOH while stirring. The pH of the solution was then brought down to 2 by the addition of 1M HCl at which point the product precipitated again. The mixture was centrifuged, the supernatant was discarded and the pellet was washed by suspending it in water and recentrifuging. The pellet was then lyophilized to give 3.6 g of product (Compound XIV). The fluorescent spectrum of Compound XIV is shown in Figure 8.
- 30

**(b) Attachment of label to a nucleotide**

- 35 [0219] Subsequent steps for the preparation of the active ester of Compound XIV and attachment to dUTP with a rigid linker arm were carried out as described in Example 4.

**EXAMPLE 6 Preparation of cyanine dyes with a rigid linker arm**

**(a) Preparation of compound XV [(2,3,3, Trimethyl-3-H-indol-5-yl) acetic acid]**

- 40 [0220] 110 g of 4-Hydrazinobenzoic acid were mixed with 450 ml of glacial acetic acid and 250 ml of 3-methyl-2-butanone under stirring. The mixture was heated at 128°C-130°C for 6 hours and left to cool overnight at room temperature. The glacial acetic acid and 3-methyl-2-butanone were removed under vacuum and the solid was triturated with 300 ml  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , filtered and washed again with 300 ml  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . The cake was subsequently dried under vacuum. The solid was then recrystallized from ethyl acetate resulting in Compound XV.
- 45

**(b) Preparation of Compound XVI (diglycylallylamine)**

- 50 [0221] Compound X from step (d) of Example 4 was reacted with a 1.2 fold excess of allylamine acetate in a 50:50 mixture of DMF/ $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . The solution was maintained at pH 8 by the addition of triethylamine and the reaction was carried out for 4 hours at room temperature. The solution was dried under vacuum and the mixture was triturated with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  to remove triethylamine salts. The slurry was filtered, washed with cold  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , lyophilized and dried resulting in Compound XVI

55

**(c) Preparation of Compound XVII [(2,3,3 Trimethyl-3-H-indol-5yl) acetamido diglycylallylamine]**

- [0222] 20.6 g of Compound XV prepared in Example 7 were dissolved in 100 ml of DMF followed by addition of 20g

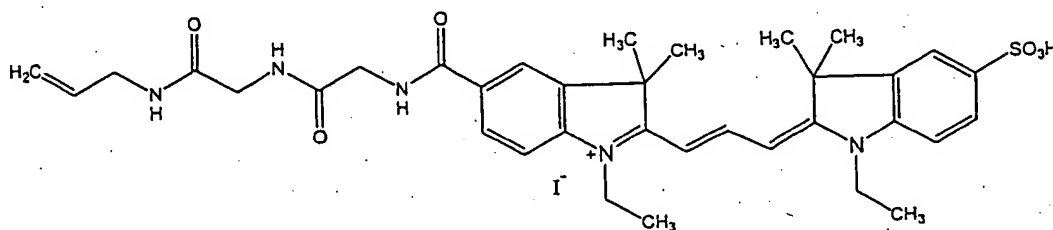
of N-hydroxysuccinimide under stirring. A mixture of 22 g of dicyclohexyl carbodiimide dissolved in 30 ml of DMF was then added. The mixture was left at room temperature overnight and the next day, urea was removed by filtration. 30 g of Compound XVI from step (a) was dissolved in 100 ml of 50:50 mixture of ethanol and 1M LiOH in H<sub>2</sub>O to liberate the amine. This solution was neutralized with acetic acid to pH 8 and added to the filtrate above. An equivalent amount of triethanolamine was slowly added to the solution over a 1 hour period. The mixture was left at room temperature overnight and the resultant precipitate was filtered and extracted with 500 ml of chloroform to produce Compound XVII.

**(d) Preparation of Compound XVIII [(2,3,3 Trimethyl-3-H-indol-5yl) acetamido diglycylallylamido ethylammonium iodide]**

[0223] Chloroform was removed from Compound XVII by vacuum. The glassy residue was dissolved in 200 ml of DMF followed by removal of the DMF by vacuum. The residue was mixed with 150 ml dichlorobenzene and 100 ml ethyl iodide and refluxed at 16 hour at 100°C. After cooling, the solvent was removed by decantation. The glassy residue was triturated with ether to produce Compound XVIII.

**(e) Preparation of Cyanine dyes and Cyanine dye labeled nucleotides.**

[0224] Compound XVIII was used without any further purification to synthesize the cyanine dyes as described in Examples 1 and 2. The structure of a Cy 3 analogue made with Compound XVIII is given below.



The presence of the terminal alkene bond allowed labeling of dUTP as described in Example 3. When tested in a conventional cDNA synthesis assay, significantly higher incorporation was seen with dUTP labeled with Compound XVIII as compared to a commercially available Cy-3 labeled dUTP (Cat. No. PA 530220) from Amersham Biosciences Corp., Piscataway, NJ.

**EXAMPLE 7 meta-EthD, with and without DNA.**

**a) Synthesis of meta-EthD**

[0225] The synthesis of meta-EthD was carried out according to the method described by Kuhlmann et al., *supra*. A diagram of the synthetic steps is given in Figure 9. In this procedure, the 2-amino-diphenyl- compound (1) was condensed with acid chloride (2) to give the amide (3) which was then converted to a cyclic form to give the phenanthridine (4). This compound (4) was hydrolyzed to give the acid (5), converted to the acid chloride (6) and then condensed with 1,5-diamino-pentane to give the homodimer. The homodimer was methylated to give (7) which was reduced to give the final product (8) meta-EthD whose structure is given in Figure 2.

**b) Spectral analysis**

[0226] meta-EthD was excited at 493 nm and gave emission of  $1 \times 10^5$  counts/second at 617 nm (Figure 10A). When double stranded DNA was added, the emission increased to  $6 \times 10^5$  (Figure 10 B). In contrast, when excited at a wavelength of 350 nm, the emission at 600 nm was  $2 \times 10^4$  counts/second that increased to approximately  $3.25 \times 10^6$  counts/second upon the addition of DNA (Figure 11).

**EXAMPLE 8 Energy transfer between a donor nucleotide and an acceptor nucleotide**

[0227] The sequence of an amplicon that can be made from an HIV antisense construct is given in Figure 12. A description of the derivation of this construct is given in Liu et al., (1997) J. Virol 71: 4079-4085. PCR of target analytes

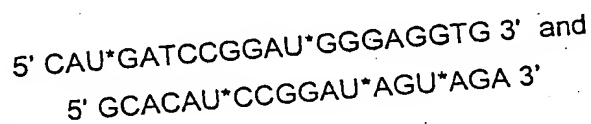
in a sample can be carried out in the presence of a mixture of dUTP labeled with fluorescein as an energy donor and dUTP labeled with Compound XIII from Example 4 as an energy acceptor using the primers shown in Figure 12. During the course of amplification, nucleic acid strands are synthesized that incorporate each of these labels. Illumination at a wavelength appropriate for fluorescein followed by detection at a wavelength appropriate for the emission of Compound XIII should result in signal generation whenever donor nucleotides and acceptor nucleotides are in sufficient proximity. Either single strands or double strands could be analyzed for this purpose.

**EXAMPLE 9 Energy transfer between an intercalator and an incorporated dye**

[0228] PCR is carried out using the same primers as used in Example 8. However, in this example, the reaction is carried out in the presence of SYBR Green and a labeled dUTP from Example 7. As incorporation proceeds, double-stranded DNA begins to accumulate that has Compound XVIII labeled nucleotides incorporated. As described previously, SYBR Green displays enhanced fluorescence after binding to double-stranded DNA. Since SYBR Green maximally emits at 521 nm and Compound XVIII maximally absorbs at 550 nm, fluorescence from Compound XVIII should increase as synthesis proceeds due to energy transfer from SYBR green donors to Compound XVIII as an acceptor thus indicating successful amplification of target sequences.

**EXAMPLE 10 Energy transfer between an intercalator and an incorporated dye with primers that comprise quencher moieties**

[0229] This example is carried out as describe in Example 9 except that the primers are labeled with quenchers as follows:



where U\* are uridine moieties modified with a non-fluorescent 3-amino xanthene as described by Singer and Haugland in U.S. Patent No. 6,323,337 that absorb at about 530 nm. PCR is carried out with these primers in the presence of a labeled dUTP from Example 7 and SYBR Green as described above. Fluorescence from the intercalated SYBR Green can be absorbed either by Compound XVIII or by the quencher. If Primer-dimers are formed, these comprise only primers and their complements. As such energy transfer should most efficiently take place with the quenchers and thereby reduce spurious signal generation from primer-dimer synthesis. On the other hand, amplicons derived from amplification of target sequences have segments where only compound XVIII is in sufficient proximity to the SYBR for energy transfer to take place and target dependent signals are generated as synthesis proceeds.

**EXAMPLE 11 Energy transfer between a probe and an incorporated nucleotide**

[0230] PCR can be carried out with the same primers used in Example 8. In this reaction mixture, potential donors are supplied in the form of dUTP labeled with Compound XVIII from Example 7. The reaction mixture also contains a DNA probe labeled with Texas Red moieties that can act as energy acceptors. The probe has the sequence



where U<sup>F</sup> indicates a Uridine labeled with Texas Red. The position of this probe in the amplicon is shown in Figure 12. The probe is also blocked at the 3' end such that it is incapable of being extended. As amplification is carried out, hybridization of the probe to labeled amplicon strands allow energy transfer to take place between Compound XVIII and Texas Red that should increase as more amplicon strands are generated.

**EXAMPLE 12 Endonuclease digestion and strand extension using a homopolymeric target as a substrate**

[0231] The steps in this example are shown in Figure 13. A CNAC with three segments can be synthesized that has the sequence:





where U is a uridine ribonucleotide, T is a thymidine deoxyribonucleotide and Q is an inosine ribonucleotide and the 3' end has been modified to prevent extension. In this example, the ribonucleotides are 2'-O-methyl as described by Shibahara et al., (1987) Nucl. Acids Res. 15; 4403-4415 and Baranov et al., (1997) Nucl. Acids Res. 25; 2266-2273 (both of which are incorporated by reference). The CNAC can be hybridized to a library of poly A mRNA (step A) forming:

- a first complex with the oligo-uridine first segment bound to a portion of the poly A tail,
- a second complex with the oligo-thymidine second segment bound to a second portion of the poly A tail; and
- a third complex with the oligo-inosine third segment bound to a third portion of the poly A tails.

In this example, the first and third complexes will be resistant to the actions of RNase H and the second complex should form a substrate for RNase activity since four deoxyribonucleotides are known to be sufficient. Digestion with RNase H at 20-25°C (step B) should induce cleavage in the poly A segment bound to the oligoT's in the second complex and release of the cleaved poly A tail. Provision of dATP, dCTP and Reverse transcriptase allows extension of the 3' end of the mRNA (step C). Additionally, if these reagents are present during the RNase H digestion step they may help stabilize the binding of the CNAC to the 3' end after endonucleolytic cleavage as described previously. It should be noted that although the inosine is capable of binding to the poly A segment, when it is used as a template, it preferentially incorporates cytosine thereby introducing a new oligo-C segment into the end of the mRNA. Removal of the CNAC allows the oligo-C segment to be used as primer binding site for an oligonucleotide containing a complementary oligo-G segment and an RNA promoter sequence. Synthesis of a cDNA strand, production of a second cDNA strand and generation of a labeled library can then be carried out by any method described previously including U.S. Patent No. 5,891,636 and Rabbani et al. in U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 09/896,897 filed June 30, 2001.

#### **EXAMPLE 13 Addition of an RNA polymerase sequence to an analyte**

[0232] This example is carried out as described in Example 12 except that the third segment of the CNAC comprises unmodified ribonucleotides and contains the sequence for an RNA promoter. As such, after strand extension in step (c), a new third complex is formed where the extended nucleotides are deoxyribonucleotides and the CNAC third segment comprises ribonucleotide. This is a substrate for RNase H digestion which can then be used to generate a single-stranded segment at the 3' end of the mRNA that is complementary to the RNA promoter sequence. A primer with promoter sequence can then be hybridized to the extended segment of the mRNA to synthesize a cDNA with a promoter at the 5' end. Subsequent events can be carried out as described in Example 12. The remaining portion of the CNAC can be removed prior to binding of the primer or extension of the primer can allow a strand displacement event.

#### **EXAMPLE 14 Preparation of a Dioxetane Derivative that is Capable of Light Generation After an Enzyme Catalyzed Intrachain Rearrangement.**

[0233] A schematic of the steps that can be used to synthesize an intermediate compound for derivatization of a dioxetane is shown in Figure 14. The series of steps shown in this schematic can be carried out using standard chemistry methods. In the last step of this procedure, compound (e) can be attached to a dioxetane derivative where both "Q" and "Z" are as described previously. This dioxetane derivative (f) comprises an R1 and an R2 group joined to adjacent sites of a cyclic ring as disclosed and defined in the present invention.

#### **EXAMPLE 15 Potential Series of Enzyme Dependent Events with Compound (f) from Example 14.**

[0234] In the presence of Acylase I, a cleavage event takes place that generates a free primary amine as shown by compound (f) being converted to compound (g) in Figure 15. Due to the proximity of the released primary amine to the benzoyl residue in compound (g) and subsequent formation of a six-membered ring in the transition state, compound (h), the internal rearrangement to produce compound (i) is a very rapid reaction. The presence of the phenoxy group in compound (i) makes it an unstable dioxetane that should generate light as it decomposes. It has been previously described in the literature that a similar displacement can take place with an acyl residue and a primary amine or thiol at the end of a chain attached to the acyl group. These previously described reactions should not have the favorable kinetics of the reaction shown in this example.

[0235] This example shows an enzymatic reaction that converts R1 into R1\* thereby producing a reactive group G1 that is at the end of a chain attached to one site of a cyclic ring. In this particular example, Acylase I is the enzyme and G1 is a free primary amine. The reaction continues with G1 interacting with a benzoyl group (G2) that is attached to a different site on the cyclic ring. This intermediate is shown as (h) in Figure 15. An internal rearrangement takes place between the amine and benzoyl group (G1 and G2 respectively) leading to the intrachain transfer of the benzoyl group

and generation of an unstable light emitting dioxetane.

[0236] Many obvious variations will no doubt be suggested to those of ordinary skill in the art in light of the above detailed description and examples of the present invention. All such variations are fully embraced by the scope and spirit of the invention as more particularly defined in the claims that now follow.

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> Enzo Life Sciences, Inc.

<120> REAL-TIME NUCLEIC ACID DETECTION PROCESSES AND COMPOSITIONS

<130> H1324 EP

<150> 10/096,076

<151> 2002-03-12

<160> 12

<170> PatentIn Ver. 2.1.

<210> 1

<211> 20

<212> DNA

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Primer

<220>

<223> Description of Combined DNA/RNA Molecule: Primer

<220>

<221> modified\_base

<222> (3)

<223> Uridine moiety modified with a non-flourescent:  
3-amino xanthene

<220>

<221> modified\_base

<222> (12)

<223> Uridine moiety modified with a non-flourescent:  
3-amino xanthene

<400> 1

caugatccgg augggaggtg

<210> 2

<211> 18

<212> DNA

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Primer

<220>

<223> Description of Combined DNA/RNA Molecule: Probe

<220>

<221> modified\_base

<222> (6)  
<223> Uridine moiety modified with a non-flourescent  
3-amino xanthene

5  
<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (12)  
<223> Uridine moiety modified with a non-flourescent  
3-amino xanthene

10  
<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (15)  
<223> Uridine moiety modified with a non-flourescent  
3-amino xanthene

15  
<400> 2  
gcacaucgg auaguaga 18

20  
<210> 3  
<211> 27  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

25  
<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic  
probe sequence

30  
<220>  
<223> Description of Combined DNA/RNA Molecule: Synthetic  
probe sequence

35  
<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (1)  
<223> Uridine labeled with Texas Red

40  
<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (7)  
<223> Uridine labeled with Texas Red

45  
<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (17)  
<223> Uridine labeled with Texas Red

50  
<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (27)  
<223> Uridine labeled with Texas Red

55  
<400> 3  
uaatggugag tatcccgcc taactcu 27

<210> 4  
 <211> 22  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
 <223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic chimeric nucleic acid construct sequence

<220>  
 <223> Description of Combined DNA/RNA Molecule: Synthetic chimeric nucleic acid construct sequence

<220>  
 <221> modified base  
 <222> (15)..(22)  
 <223> Inosine ribonucleotide

<400> 4  
 uuuuuuuuuu ttttnnnnnn nn

<210> 5  
 <211> 33  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
 <223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Primer

<400> 5  
 gcgacctgcg aatgctatgg atcaggctag cca

<210> 6  
 <211> 20  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
 <223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Primer

<400> 6  
 catgatccgg atgggaggtg

<210> 7  
 <211> 27  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
 <223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Synthetic probe

<400> 7  
taatggtgag tatccctgcc taactct

5

<210> 8  
<211> 78  
<212> DNA  
<213> Human immunodeficiency virus.

10

<400> 8  
catgatccgg atgggaggtg ggtctgaaac gataatggtg agtatccctg cctaactcta 60  
ttcactatcc ggatgtgc 78

15

<210> 9  
<211> 22  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

20

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Primer

22

<400> 9  
gcacatccgg atagtgaata ga

25

<210> 10  
<211> 65  
<212> RNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

30

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Primer

<400> 10  
aaaaaaaaa aaaaaaaaaa aaaaaaaaaa aaaaaaaaaa aaaaaaaaaa 60  
aaaaaa 65

35

<210> 11  
<211> 14  
<212> RNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

40

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Primer

14

45

<400> 11  
aaaaaaaaa aaaa

50

<210> 12  
<211> 26  
<212> RNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

55

EP 1 344 835 A2

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Primer

26

<400> 12  
aaaaaaaaa aaaaaaaacc cccccc

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

Claims

1. A composition of matter comprising at least two parts:

a first part comprising at least one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises

- (i) at least one first energy transfer element; and
- (ii) nucleic acid sequences which are complementary to sequences in at least a portion of a nucleic acid of interest;

a second part comprising at least one second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises:

- (i) at least one second energy transfer element; and
  - (ii) nucleic acid sequences which are identical to nucleic acid sequences in at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest;
- wherein said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct does not comprise said second energy transfer element, and wherein said second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct does not comprise said first energy transfer element.

2. A composition of matter comprising at least two parts:

a first part comprising at least two segments, wherein said first segment comprises a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and at least one first energy transfer element, and said second segment comprises primer-extended complementary to at least a portion of a nucleic acid of interest; and

a second part comprising at least two segments, wherein said first segment of said second part comprises a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and at least one second energy transfer element; and wherein said second segment of said second part comprises a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence which is identical to at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest; wherein said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct does not comprise said second energy transfer element, and wherein said second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct does not comprise said first nucleic acid energy element.

3. A composition of matter comprising two nucleic acid strands, wherein the first of said two strands comprises at least one first energy transfer element, and the second of said two strands comprises at least one second energy transfer element and wherein said first strand or a portion thereof is hybridized to said second strand or a portion thereof, and wherein said first strand lacks said second energy transfer element and said second strand lacks said first energy transfer element.

4. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) the composition of claim 1;
- (ii) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest; and
- (iii) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

- (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii) and (iii) above;
- (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (i) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (i) with the complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;
- (d) extending said first nucleic acid primer and said second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if said complementary strand is present;
- (e) separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said nucleic acid of interest and separating



- 5 said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;  
 (f) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (i) with said nucleic acid of interest or said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (e), and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (i) with said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (e); and  
 (g) detecting by means of said first and second energy transfer elements in said composition (i) the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest.
- 10 5. A composition of matter that comprises a nucleic acid strand, said strand comprising two segments, the first segment comprising a primer or a nucleic acid construct; and said second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, wherein said primer or nucleic acid construct comprises a first energy transfer element, and wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises a second energy transfer element, and wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises more than one nucleotide.
- 15 6. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:
- (a) providing
- 20 (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;  
 (ii) a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises:  
 (A) a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest and  
 (B) a first energy transfer element;
- 25 (iii) labeled nucleotide or nucleotides comprising a second energy transfer element; and  
 (iv) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;
- 30 (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) above;  
 (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said nucleic acid of interest;  
 (d) extending said nucleic acid primer by more than one nucleotide, thereby incorporating said labeled nucleotide or nucleotides; and  
 (e) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element in said nucleic acid primer and said second energy transfer element in an incorporated nucleotide.
- 35 7. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:
- 40 (a) providing
- 45 (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;  
 (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;  
 (iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical to at least a portion of said one strand;  
 (iv) labeled nucleotide or nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element; and  
 (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;  
 wherein (ii), (iii) or both (ii) and (iii) comprise a second energy transfer element;
- 50 (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;  
 (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (iii) with the complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;  
 (d) extending said first nucleic acid primer and said second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if said complementary strand is
- 55

present, thereby incorporating said labeled nucleotide or nucleotides;  
 (e) separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said nucleic acid of interest and separating  
 said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from said complementary strand of said nucleic acid of  
 interest if present;  
 (f) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said  
 nucleic acid of interest or said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence from step (e), and contacting  
 under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (iii) with said first primer-  
 extended nucleic acid sequence from step (e); and  
 (g) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between a  
 second energy transfer element in said first nucleic acid primer, said second nucleic acid primer, or both, and  
 a first energy element in an incorporated nucleotide.

8. A composition of matter that comprises a nucleic acid strand, said strand comprising two segments, the first seg-  
 ment comprising a primer or a nucleic acid construct; and the second segment comprising a primer-extended  
 sequence, wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises one or more first energy transfer elements and one  
 or more second energy transfer elements.

9. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic  
 acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;  
 (ii) a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary  
 to at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest and  
 (iii) one or more first nucleotides, said first nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element, and one  
 or more second nucleotides, said second nucleotides comprising a second energy transfer element;  
 (iv) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

(b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) above;

(c) contacting under hybridization conditions said nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said nucleic  
 acid of interest;

(d) extending said nucleic acid primer, thereby incorporating said first and second nucleotides; and  
 (e) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between  
 said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

10. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic  
 acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;  
 (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence comple-  
 mentary to at least a portion of one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;  
 (iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical  
 to at least a portion of said one strand;  
 (iv) one or more first nucleotides, said first nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element, and  
 one or more second nucleotides, said second nucleotides comprising a second energy transfer element;  
 and  
 (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

(b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;

(c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with one  
 strand of said nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid  
 primer in said composition (iii) with the complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present; (d)  
 extending said first nucleic acid primer and said second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended  
 nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if said complementary strand is  
 present, thereby incorporating said first and second nucleotides; and

(e) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

11. A composition of matter that comprises a nucleic acid strand, said strand comprising two or more ribonucleotides, wherein at least one ribonucleotide comprises a first energy transfer element and wherein at least one other ribonucleotide comprises a second energy transfer element.

12. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

(i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;

(ii) at least one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and optionally, a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, wherein either the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or said optional second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises an RNA promoter sequence;

(iii) one or more first ribonucleotides, said first ribonucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element, and one or more second ribonucleotides, said second ribonucleotides comprising a second energy transfer element;

(iv) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension and RNA transcription;

(b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii) and (iii) above;

(c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;

(d) extending said nucleic acid primer to form a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence;

(e) synthesizing a second nucleic acid strand complementary to said primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or a portion thereof, thereby forming a double-stranded nucleic acid;

(f) transcribing said double-stranded nucleic acid formed in step (e) to incorporate said first and second ribonucleotides (iii) into transcripts;

(g) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element;

wherein said transcribing step (f) is carried out by said RNA promoter sequence in either the primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or the second nucleic acid strand synthesized in step (e).

13. A composition of matter that comprises two parts, wherein the first part is a nucleic acid strand comprising two segments, the first segment comprising a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, and the second segment comprises a primer-extended sequence, and wherein the second part comprises a nucleic acid binding agent, wherein said nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises one or more fluorescent first energy transfer elements and wherein said nucleic acid binding agent comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

14. A composition of matter that comprises

(a) two nucleic acid strands,

wherein at least one of said strands comprises two segments, the first segment comprising a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, and

(b) a nucleic acid binding agent,

wherein said nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises one or more fluorescent first energy transfer elements and wherein said nucleic acid binding agent comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

15. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

(i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;

(ii) a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises

- (A) a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest; and
- (B) one or more fluorescent first energy transfer elements;

- (iii) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more second energy transfer elements;
- (iv) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

- (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) above;
- (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said nucleic acid of interest;
- (d) extending said nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct to form a primer-extended sequence;
- (e) binding said nucleic acid binding agent (iii) to said primer-extended sequence or to a complex comprising said nucleic acid of interest and said primer-extended sequence; and
- (f) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

16. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

- (a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
  - (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;
  - (iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical to at least a portion of said one strand;
  - (iv) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more first energy transfer elements; and
  - (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;
- wherein (ii), (iii) or both (ii) and (iii) comprise one or more fluorescent second energy transfer elements;

- (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;
- (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer in said composition (iii) with the complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;
- (d) extending said first nucleic acid primer and said second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is present;
- (e) binding said nucleic acid binding agent (iv) to a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or to a complex comprising said nucleic acid of interest and a primer-extended sequence; and
- (f) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between a second energy transfer element in said first nucleic acid primer, said second nucleic acid primer, or both, and a first energy element in said nucleic acid binding agent (iv).

17. A composition of matter that comprises

- (a) a nucleic acid strand comprising two segments, said first segment comprising a primer or a nucleic acid construct; and said second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence; and
- (b) a nucleic acid binding agent;

wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises one or more first energy transfer elements, and wherein said nucleic acid binding agent comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

18. A composition of matter that comprises

- (a) two nucleic acid strands, wherein at least one of said strands comprises two segments, the first segment comprising a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, and
- (b) a nucleic acid binding agent,

wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises one or more first energy transfer elements, and wherein said nucleic acid binding agent comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

19. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) at least one nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct complementary to at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest;
- (iii) labeled nucleotide or nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element;
- (iv) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more second energy transfer elements; and
- (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

- (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;
- (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said nucleic acid of interest;
- (d) extending said nucleic acid primer, thereby incorporating said labeled nucleotide or nucleotides;
- (e) binding said nucleic acid binding agent to said primer-extended sequence; and
- (f) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

20. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing:

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;
- (iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical to at least a portion of said one strand;
- (iv) one or more labeled nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element;
- (v) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more second energy transfer elements; and
- (vi) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

- (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v) and (vi) above;
- (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (iii) with the complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;
- (d) extending said first nucleic acid primer and said second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is present, thereby incorporating said labeled nucleotide or nucleotides;
- (e) binding said nucleic acid binding agent (v) to said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, and to said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is present; and
- (f) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

21. A composition of matter that comprises:

- (i) a nucleic acid strand, said strand comprising one or more ribonucleotides, wherein at least one ribonucleotide comprises a first energy transfer element; and
- (ii) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising one or more second energy transfer elements.

22. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) at least one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and optionally, a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct,
- wherein either the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or said optional second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises an RNA promoter sequence;
- (iii) one or more labeled ribonucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element;
- (iv) a nucleic acid binding agent comprising a second energy transfer element;
- (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension and RNA transcription;

(b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;

(c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;

(d) extending said nucleic acid primer to form a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence;

(e) synthesizing a second nucleic acid strand complementary to said primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or a portion thereof, thereby forming a double-stranded nucleic acid;

(f) transcribing said double-stranded nucleic acid formed in step (e) to incorporate said labeled ribonucleotides (iii) into labeled transcripts;

(g) binding said nucleic acid binding agent (iv) to said labeled transcripts;

(h) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element;

wherein said transcribing step (f) is carried out by an RNA promoter in either the primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or the second nucleic acid strand synthesized in step (e).

23. A composition of matter that comprises a hybridized first and second nucleic acids, said first strand comprising two segments, the first segment comprising a primer or a nucleic acid construct; and the second segment comprising a primer-extended sequence, said second strand comprising a nucleic acid probe hybridized to said primer-extended sequence or a portion thereof, and wherein said primer-extended sequence comprises one or more first energy transfer elements, and wherein said nucleic acid probe comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

24. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) a nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct complementary to at least a portion of said nucleic acid of interest;
- (iii) labeled nucleotide or nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element;
- (iv) a nucleic acid probe comprising one or more second energy transfer elements; and
- (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

(b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;

(c) contacting under hybridization conditions said nucleic acid primer in said composition (ii) with said nucleic acid of interest;

(d) extending said nucleic acid primer, thereby incorporating said labeled nucleotide or nucleotides;

(e) separating said primer-extended sequence from said nucleic acid of interest (i);

(f) hybridizing said nucleic acid probe to said primer-extended sequence; and

(g) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

25. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

(a) providing:

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) a first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence complementary to at least a portion of one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;
- (iii) a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct that comprises a nucleic acid sequence identical to at least a portion of said one strand;
- (iv) one or more labeled nucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element;
- (v) a nucleic acid probe comprising one or more second energy transfer elements; and
- (vi) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension;

- (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v) and (vi) above;
- (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest and contacting under hybridization conditions said second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (iii) with the complementary strand of said nucleic acid of interest if present;
- (d) extending said first nucleic acid primer and said second nucleic acid primer to form a first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and a second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if the complementary strand is present, thereby incorporating said labeled nucleotide or nucleotides;
- (e) separating said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence and said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence if produced in step (d);
- (f) hybridizing said nucleic acid probe (v) to said first primer-extended nucleic acid sequence, or to said second primer-extended nucleic acid sequence; and
- (g) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element.

26. A composition of matter that comprises a hybridized first and second nucleic acids, said first strand comprising at least one ribonucleotide, wherein said at least one ribonucleotide comprises a first energy transfer element; said second strand comprising:

a nucleic acid probe hybridized to said first strand or a portion thereof,

- wherein said nucleic acid probe comprises one or more second energy transfer elements.

27. A process for detecting qualitatively or quantitatively the presence of a single-stranded or double-stranded nucleic acid of interest in a sample, said process comprising the steps of:

- (a) providing

- (i) a sample suspected of containing said nucleic acid of interest;
- (ii) at least one first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct and optionally, a second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, wherein either the first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct, or said optional second nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct comprises an RNA promoter sequence;
- (iii) one or more labeled ribonucleotides comprising a first energy transfer element;
- (iv) a nucleic acid binding probe comprising a second energy transfer element;
- (v) reagents for carrying out nucleic acid strand extension and RNA transcription;

- (b) forming a reaction mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v) above;
  - (c) contacting under hybridization conditions said first nucleic acid primer or nucleic acid construct (ii) with one strand of said nucleic acid of interest;
  - (d) extending said nucleic acid primer to form a primer-extended nucleic acid sequence;
  - (e) synthesizing a second nucleic acid strand complementary to said primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or a portion thereof, thereby forming a double-stranded nucleic acid;
  - (f) transcribing said double-stranded nucleic acid formed in step (e) to incorporate said labeled ribonucleotides (iii) into labeled transcripts;
  - (g) hybridizing said nucleic acid probe (iv) to said labeled transcripts;
  - (h) detecting the presence or quantity of said nucleic acid of interest by means of energy transfer between said first energy transfer element and said second energy transfer element;
- wherein said transcribing step (f) is carried out by an RNA promoter in either the primer-extended nucleic acid sequence or the second nucleic acid strand synthesized in step (e).

28. A chimeric nucleic acid construct comprising at least two segments, the first segment comprising five or more universal bases and the second segment comprising a nucleic acid template for synthesizing a discrete nucleic acid sequence.

5 29. A process for incorporating a desirable nucleic acid sequence into an analyte or a library of analytes, said process comprising the steps of:

a) providing

- 10 (i) said analyte or library of analytes;  
 (ii) a chimeric nucleic acid construct comprising at least two segments, the first segment comprising five or more universal bases and the second segment comprising a template for synthesizing said desirable nucleic acid sequence; and  
 (iii) reagents for carrying out hybridization and template-dependent strand extension;

15 b) binding or hybridizing said chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) to said analyte or library of analytes (i); and  
 c) extending the 3' end of said analyte or library of analytes;

20 wherein said second segment is a template for said extending step (c) when said second segment is in proximity to the 3' end of said analyte or library of analytes.

30. A composition comprising a set of chimeric nucleic acid constructs, each such construct comprising at least three segments, the first segment comprising four or more universal bases, the second segment comprising permutations of from one to eight nucleotides, the third segment comprising a template for synthesizing a desirable nucleic acid sequence,  
 25 wherein in said second segment, the permutations of from one to eight nucleotides comprise

$(N)_n$

30 wherein N independently comprises G, A, T or C, and wherein n is an integer from one to eight.

31. A process for incorporating a desirable nucleic acid sequence into an analyte or a library of analytes, said process comprising the steps of:

35

a) providing

- 40 (i) said analyte or library of analytes;  
 (ii) a set of chimeric nucleic acid constructs, each such construct comprising at least three segments, the first segment comprising four or more universal bases; the second segment comprising permutations of from one to eight nucleotides, the third segment comprising a template for synthesizing said desirable nucleic acid sequence, wherein in said second segment, the permutations of from one to eight nucleotides comprise

$(N)_n$

45

wherein N independently comprises G, A, T or C, and wherein n is an integer from one to eight; and  
 (iii) reagents for carrying out hybridization and template-dependent strand extension;

50

b) binding or hybridizing said chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) to said analyte or library of analytes (i); and  
 c) extending the 3' end of said analyte or library of analytes;

55

wherein said third segment is a template for said extending step (c) when said second segment is hybridized to the 3' end of said analyte or library of analytes.

32. A chimeric nucleic acid construct that comprises at least two segments,



a first segment comprising four or more universal bases; and  
a second segment which is complementary to a discrete nucleic acid sequence of interest;  
wherein the 5' end of said first segment is attached to the 3' end of said second segment, and the 5' end of  
said second segment is attached to the 3' end of said third segment.

33. A process for cleaving an analyte or a library of analytes at selected sites or sequences, said process comprising  
the steps of:

(a) providing:

- (i) said analyte or library of analytes;
- (ii) the composition of claim 32;
- (iii) a specific endonuclease;
- (iv) reagents for hybridization and endonucleolytic digestion;

(b) hybridizing said composition (ii) with said analyte or library of analytes (i) to form hybrids between said  
second segment and said selected sites or sequences in said analyte or library of analyte (i); and  
(c) cleaving endonucleolytically said hybrids.

34. A process for incorporating a desirable nucleic acid sequence into an analyte or a library of analytes, said process  
comprising the steps of:

(a) providing:

- (i) said analyte or library of analytes;
- (ii) a chimeric nucleic acid construct comprising at least two segments, wherein the first of said two seg-  
ments is complementary to a first analyte nucleic acid sequence and wherein the second of said two  
segments is complementary to a second analyte nucleic acid sequence;
- (iii) reagents for hybridization and endonucleolytic digestion;
- (iv) an endonuclease; and
- (v) reagents for strand extension;

(b) forming a mixture comprising (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv);  
(c) hybridizing said chimeric nucleic acid construct (ii) with said analyte or library of analytes (i), thereby forming  
a first complex between said first segment and said first analyte nucleic acid sequence, and a second complex  
between said second segment and said second analyte nucleic acid sequence;  
wherein said first complex is resistant to digestion by said endonuclease, and wherein said second com-  
plex comprises one or more sites sensitive to endonucleolytic digestion;  
(d) digesting said second complex with said endonuclease (iv); and  
(e) extending the 3'-end of said second analyte nucleic acid sequence, said 3'-end having been generated by  
said endonuclease (iv),  
wherein said extending step (e) is carried out by template dependent polymerization or ligation.

35. A chimeric nucleic acid construct that comprises at least two nucleic acid segments, wherein the first segment and  
the second segment each comprise sequences complementary to different portions of a homopolymeric sequence  
in a nucleic acid of interest,  
wherein hybridization of said first segment to a first portion of said homopolymeric sequence produces a first  
complex;  
wherein hybridization of said second segment to a second portion of said homopolymeric sequence produces a  
second complex; and  
wherein the second portion of the homopolymeric sequence in said second complex is a substrate for a specific  
endonuclease, and wherein said first complex is resistant to said specific endonuclease.

36. A process for removing a portion of a homopolymeric sequence from an analyte or library of analytes, said process  
comprising:

(a) providing:

(i) said analyte or library of analytes;

(ii) the construct of claim 1;

(iii) an endonuclease;

(iv) reagents for hybridization and endonucleolytic digestion;

5 (b) hybridizing the construct (ii) with said analyte or library of analytes (i) to form at least one second complex comprising the second segment in said construct (ii) hybridized to said portion of said homopolymeric sequence, and at least one first complex comprising the first segment in said construct (ii) hybridized to a different portion of said homopolymeric sequence;

10 (c) removing endonucleolytically said portion of the homopolymeric sequence hybridized to said second segment in the second complex or complexes.

15

20

25

30

35

40

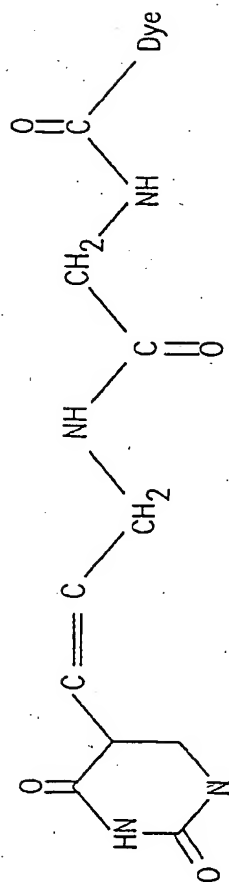
45

50

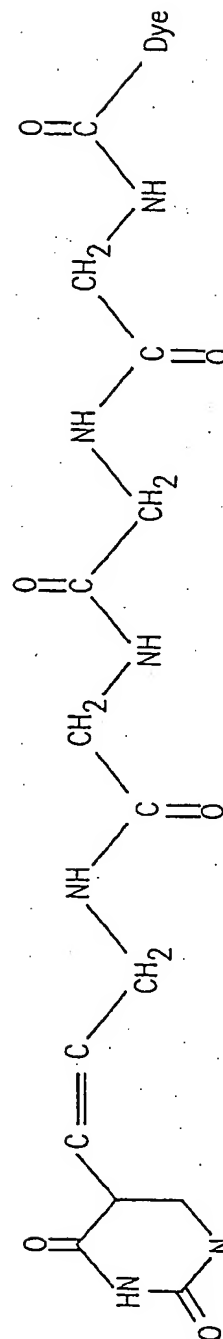
55

FIG. 1

Diglycinyllinker



Tetraglycinyllinker



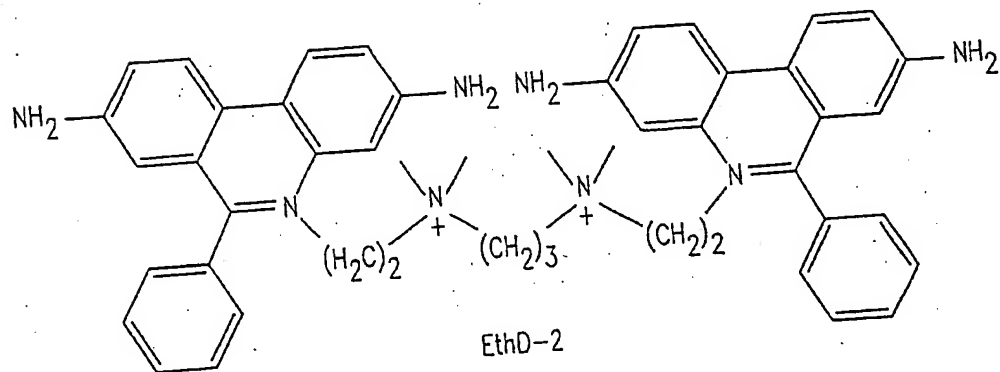
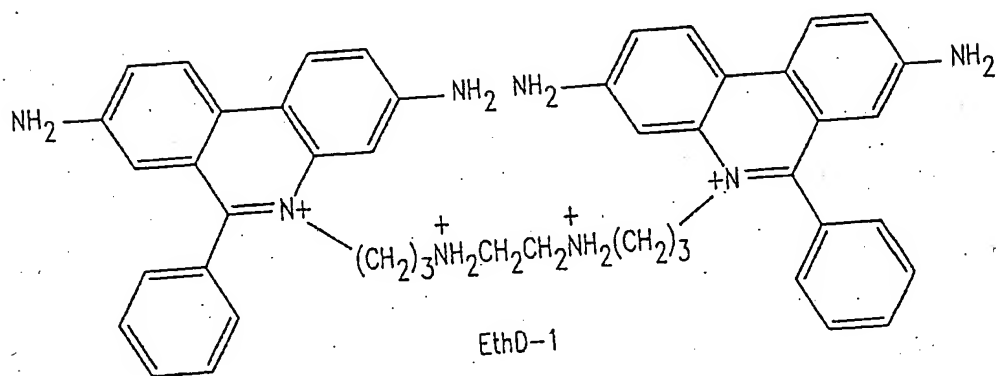
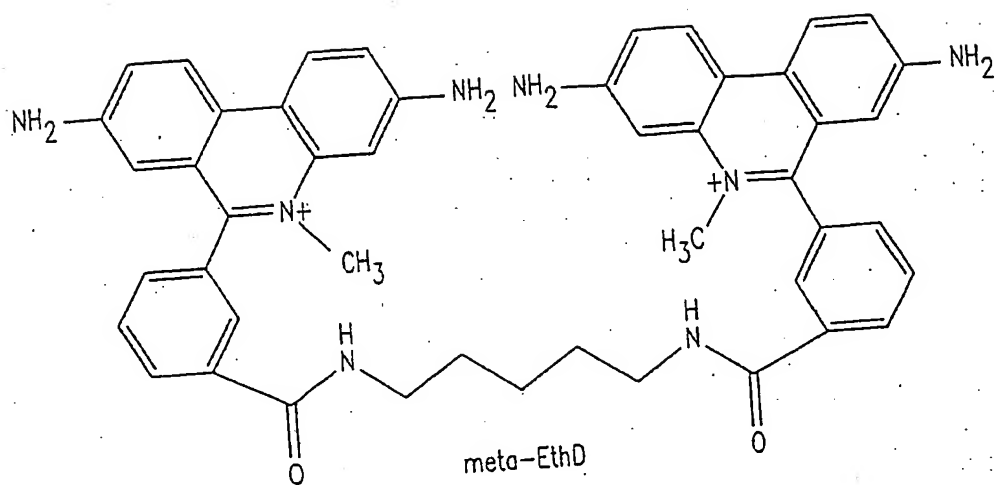


FIG. 2

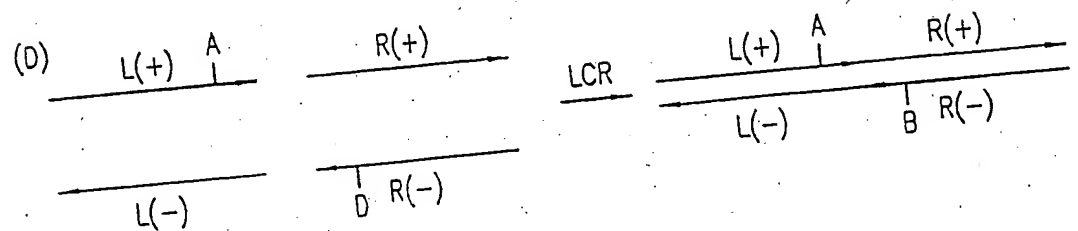
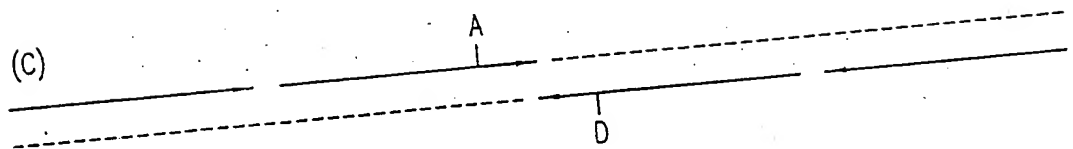
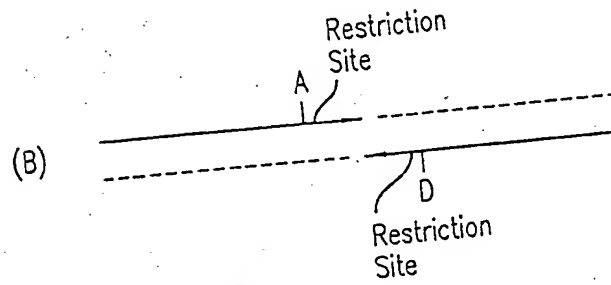
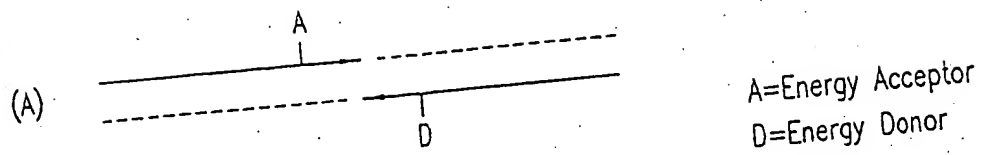


FIG. 3

EP 1 344 835 A2

Target Sequence

— GCGACCTGCGAATGCTATGGATCAGGCTAGCCA —  
— CGCTGGACGCTTACGATACCTAGTCCGATCGGT —

(A)

Donor

GCGACCTGCGAATGCTATggatcaggctagcca  
cgctggacgcttacgataCCTAGTCCGATCGGT

Acceptor

(B)

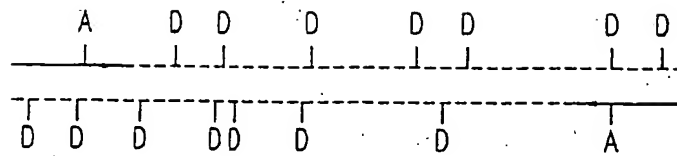
Donor

GCGACCTGCGAATGCTATggatcaggctagcca  
cgctggacgcttacgatacctAGTCCGATCGGT

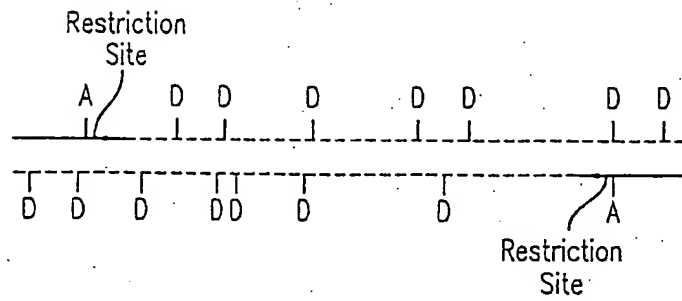
Acceptor

FIG. 4

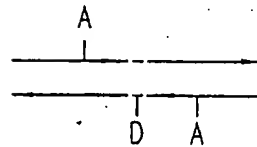
(A) PCR



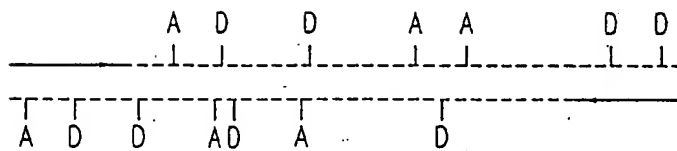
(B) SDA



(C) GAP-LCR



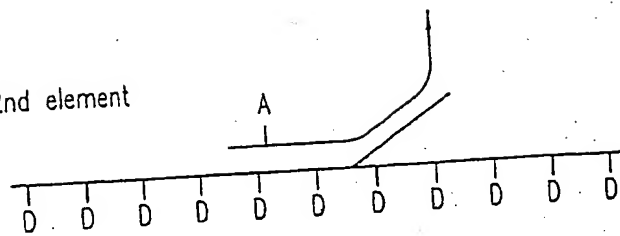
(D) PCR



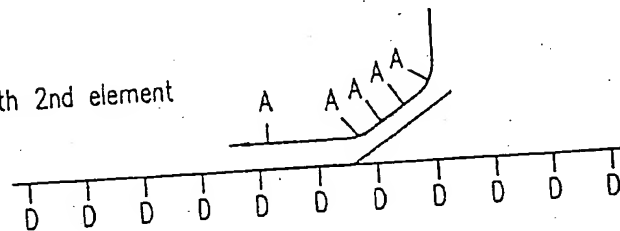
A=Energy Acceptor  
D=Energy Donor

FIG. 5

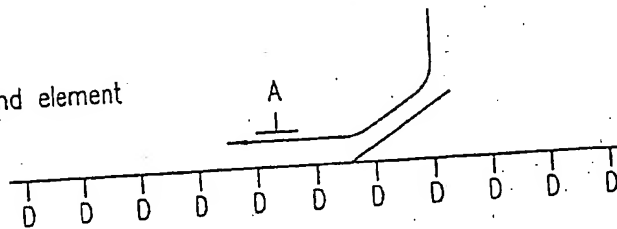
(A) Primer with 2nd element



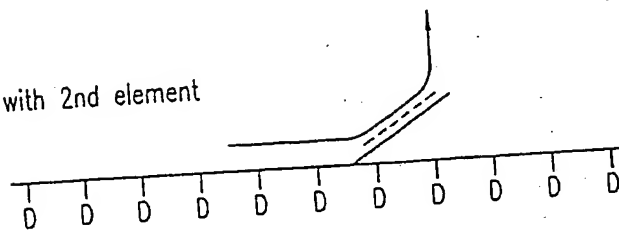
(B) Nucleotide with 2nd element



(B) Probe with 2nd element



(B) Intercalators with 2nd element



D=Energy Donor  
A=Energy Acceptor

FIG. 6



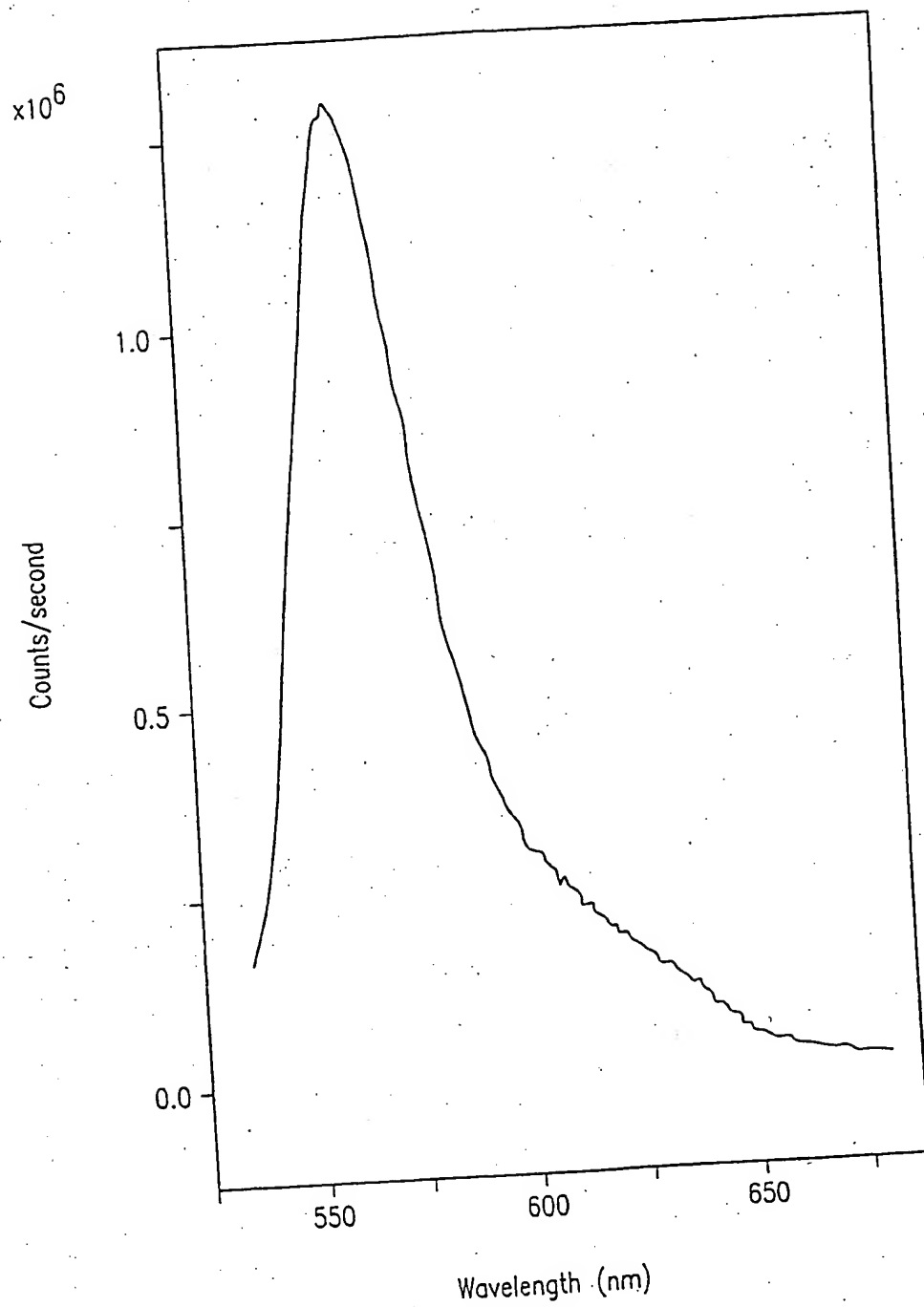


FIG. 7

EP 1 344 835 A2

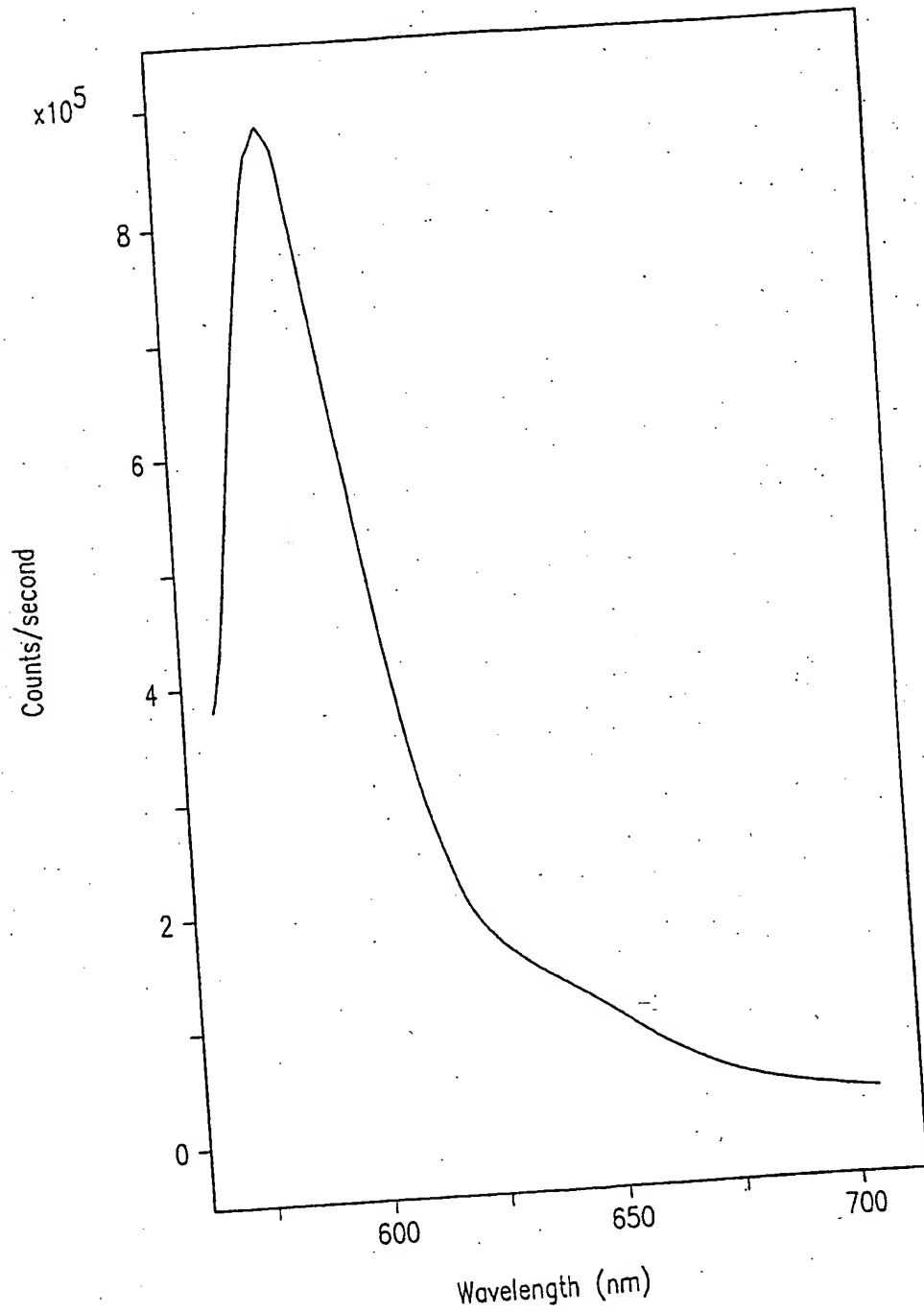


FIG. 8

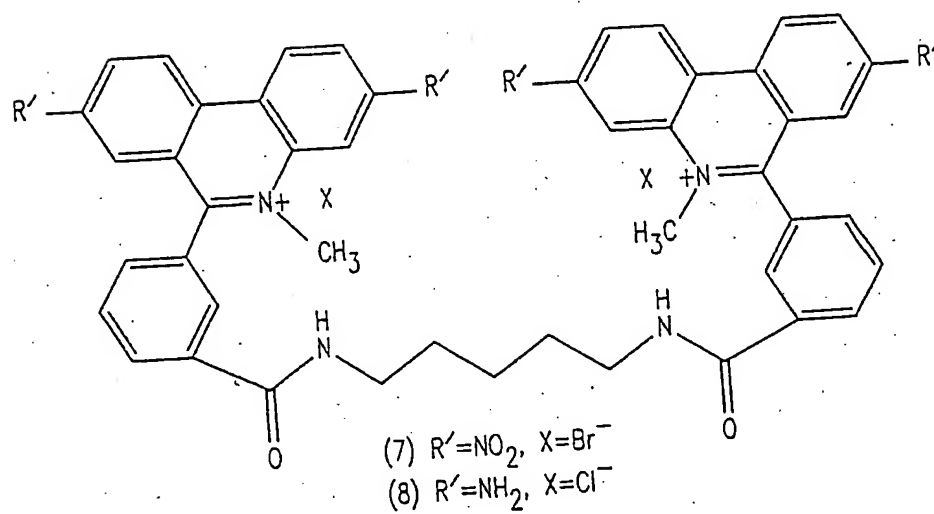
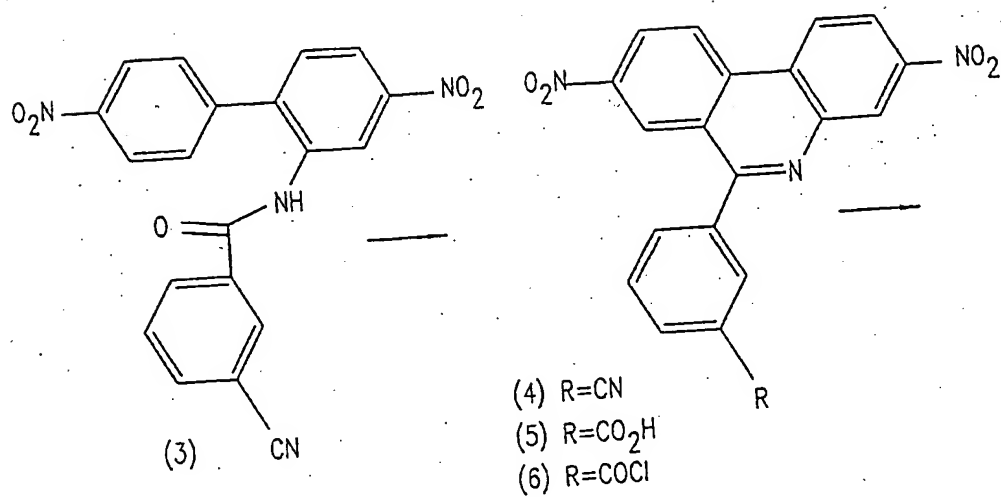
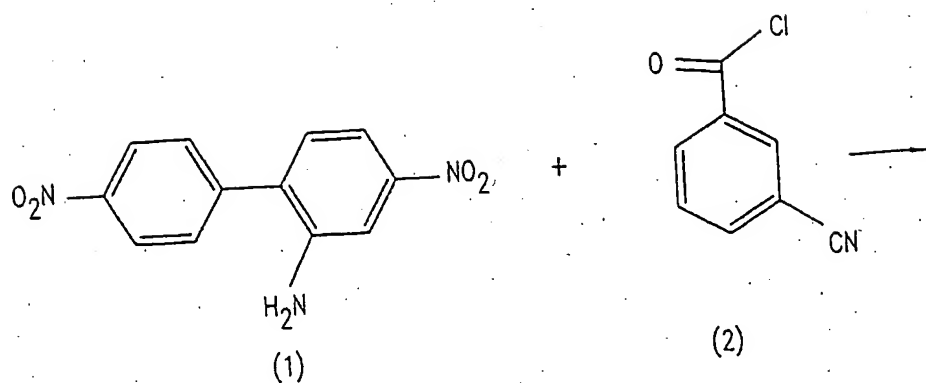
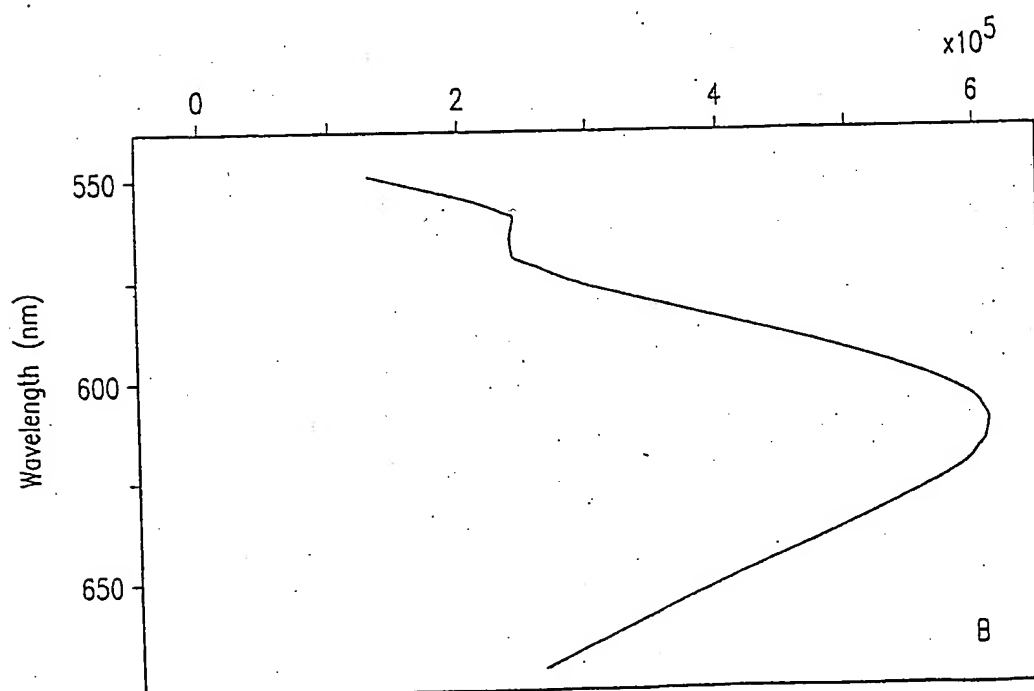
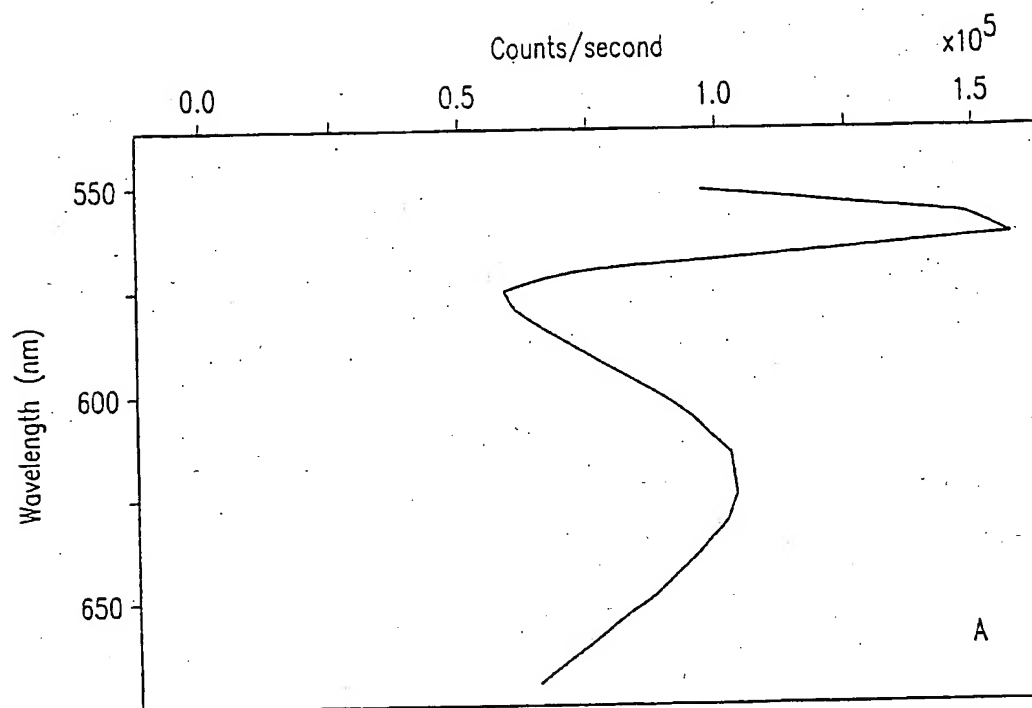
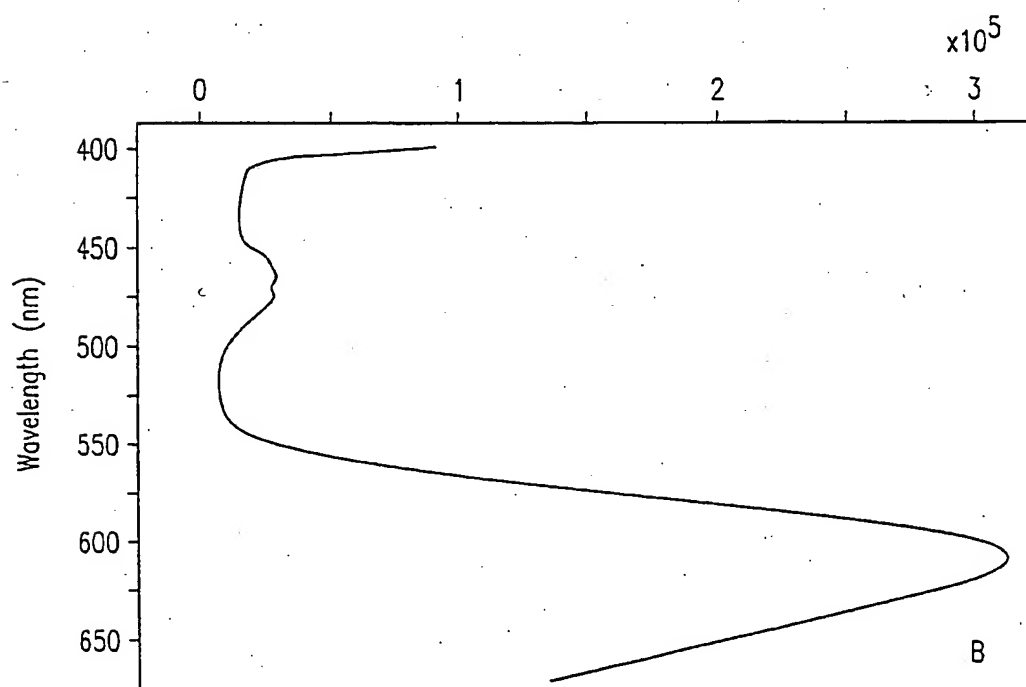
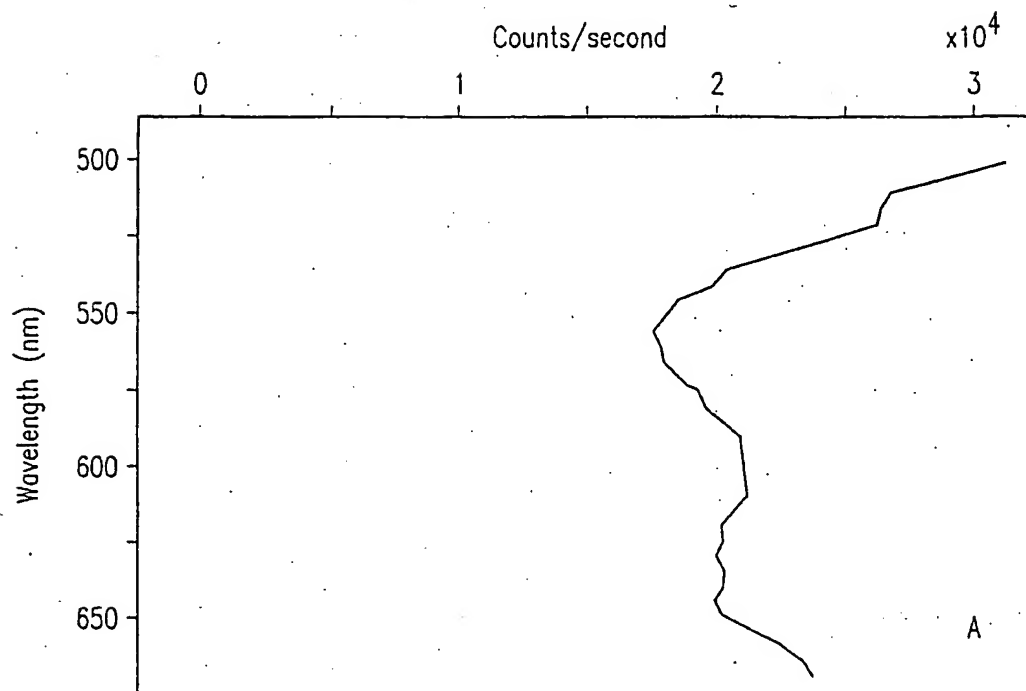


FIG. 9



Illumination at 472 nm

FIG. 10



Illumination at 350 nM

FIG. 11

HIV Anti-sense Amplicon

Forward Primer	Hybridization Probe
<u>catgatccgg atgggagggtg</u>	<u>taatgggtg agtatccctg cctaactct</u> X
catgatccgg atgggagggtg ggcttgaac gataatgggtg agtatccctg cctaactcta ttcaactatcc ggaatgtgc glactaggee taccctccac ccagactttg ctattaccac tcatagggaac ggatlgagat aagtgatagg cctacacg	
	<u>agat aagtgatagg cctacacg</u> Reverse Primer

FIG. 12

CNAC

Q=Inosine (ribonucleotide)

B) elimination of poly A segment by RNase H

RNase H

CNAC

C) Incorporation of primer binding site by template dependent extension of analyte

Reverse Transcriptase

CNAC

D) Removal of CNAC and binding of primer with promoter sequence

mRNA GGGGGGG-promoter-5'  
 AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA CCCCCCCC-3'

FIG. 13

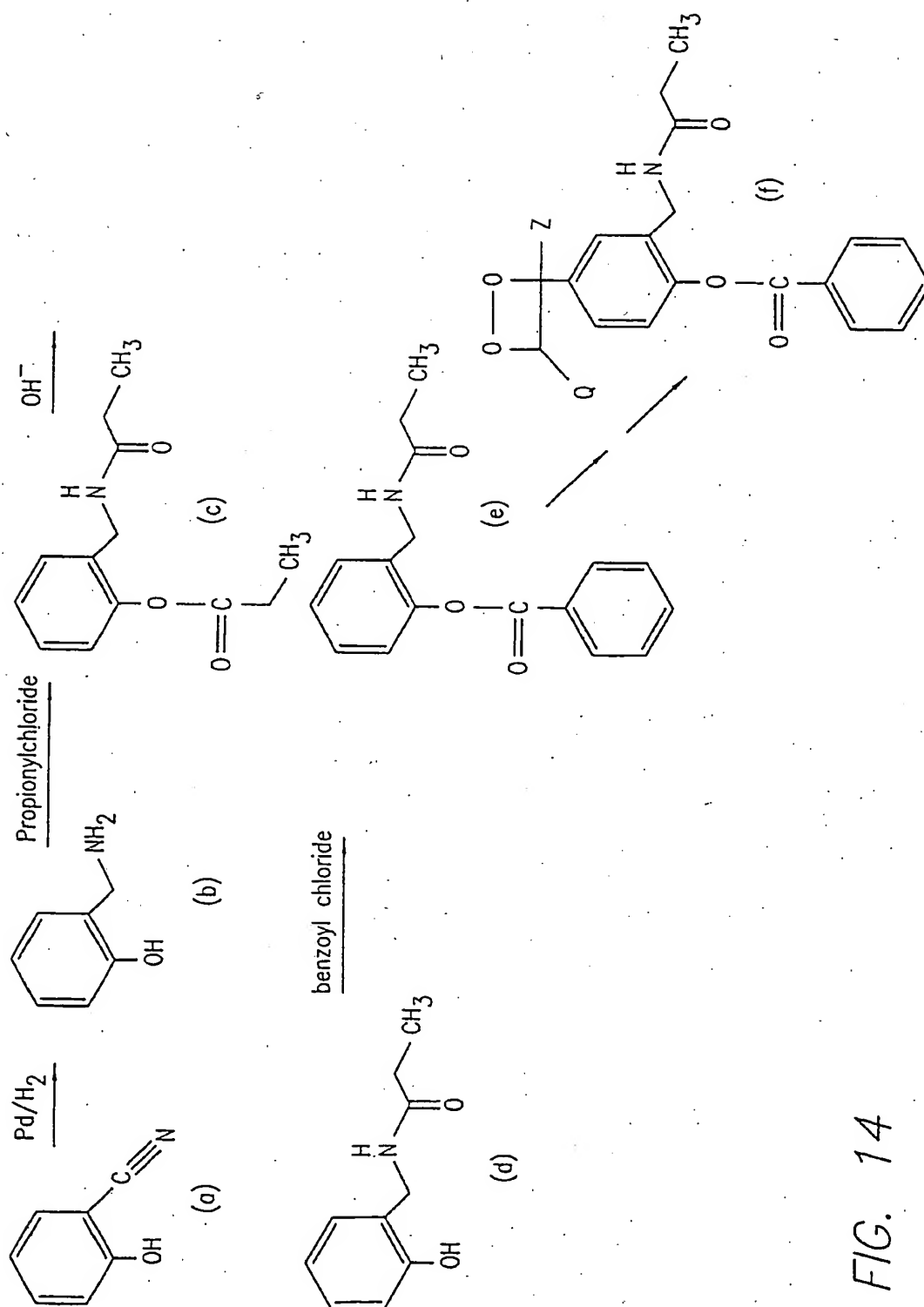


FIG. 14



# The Preparation of Highly Reactive Metals and the Development of Novel Organometallic Reagents<sup>†</sup>

Reuben D. Rieke  
Rieke Metals, Inc.  
1001 Kingbird Road  
Lincoln, NE 68521

## Outline

1. Introduction
2. Rieke<sup>®</sup> Zinc
  - 2.1. Direct Oxidative Addition to Functionalized Alkyl and Aryl Halides
  - 2.2. Structure-Reactivity of Rieke<sup>®</sup> Zinc
3. Synthesis of Specialized Polymers and New Materials via Rieke<sup>®</sup> Metals
  - 3.1. Formation of Polyarylenes Mediated by Rieke<sup>®</sup> Zinc
  - 3.2. Regiocontrolled Synthesis of Poly(3-alkylthiophenes) and Related Polymers Mediated by Rieke<sup>®</sup> Zinc
4. Rieke<sup>®</sup> Magnesium
5. Summary
6. References and Notes

## 1. Introduction

In the last three decades, considerable effort has been extended to generate ever more reactive metals with an eye to preparing novel organometallic reagents. Success in these studies has rapidly increased the array of novel organometallic reagents for the synthetic community. In 1972, we reported a general approach for preparing highly reactive metal powders by reducing metal salts in ethereal or hydrocarbon solvents using alkali metals as reducing agents.<sup>1</sup> Several basic approaches are possible and each has its own particular advantages. For some metals, all approaches lead to metal powders of identical reactivity. However, for other metals one method can lead to a far superior reactivity. High reactivity, for the most part, refers to oxidative addition reactions. Since our initial report, several other reduction methods have been reported including metal-graphite compounds, a magnesium-anthracene complex, and dissolved alkalides.<sup>2</sup>

Although our initial entry into this area of study involved the reduction of  $MgCl_2$  with potassium biphenylide, our early work concentrated on reductions without the use of electron carriers. In this approach, reductions

are conveniently carried out with an alkali metal and a solvent whose boiling point exceeds the melting point of the alkali metal. The metal salt to be reduced must also be partially soluble in the solvent, and the reductions are carried out under an argon atmosphere (eq 1).

The reductions are exothermic and are generally completed within a few hours. In addition to the metal powder, one or more moles of alkali salt are generated. Convenient systems of reducing agents and solvents include potassium and THF, sodium and 1,2-dimethoxyethane (DME), and sodium or potassium with benzene or toluene. For many metal salts, solubility considerations restrict reductions to ethereal solvents. Also, for some metal salts, reductive cleavage of the ethereal solvents requires reductions in hydrocarbon solvents such as benzene or toluene. This is the case for Al, In, and Cr. When reductions are carried out in hydrocarbon solvents, solubility of the metal salts may become a serious problem. In the case of Cr, this was solved by using  $CrCl_3 \cdot 3THF$ .<sup>3</sup>

A second general approach is to use an alkali metal in conjunction with an electron carrier such as naphthalene. The electron carrier is normally used in less than stoichiometric proportions, generally 5 to 10 mol %, based on the metal salt being reduced. This procedure allows reductions to be carried out at ambient temperature, or at least at lower temperatures as compared with the preceding approach, which requires refluxing. A convenient reducing metal is lithium. Not only is the procedure much safer when lithium is used rather than sodium or potassium, but in many cases the reactivities of the metal powders produced are greater.

A third approach is to use a stoichiometric amount of preformed lithium naphthalenide. This approach allows for the very rapid generation of the metal powders, since the reductions are diffusion controlled. Very low to ambient temperatures can be used for the reduction. In some cases, the reductions are slower at low temperatures because of the low



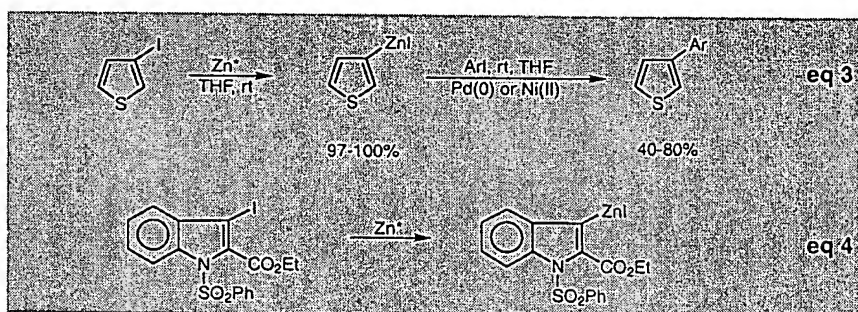
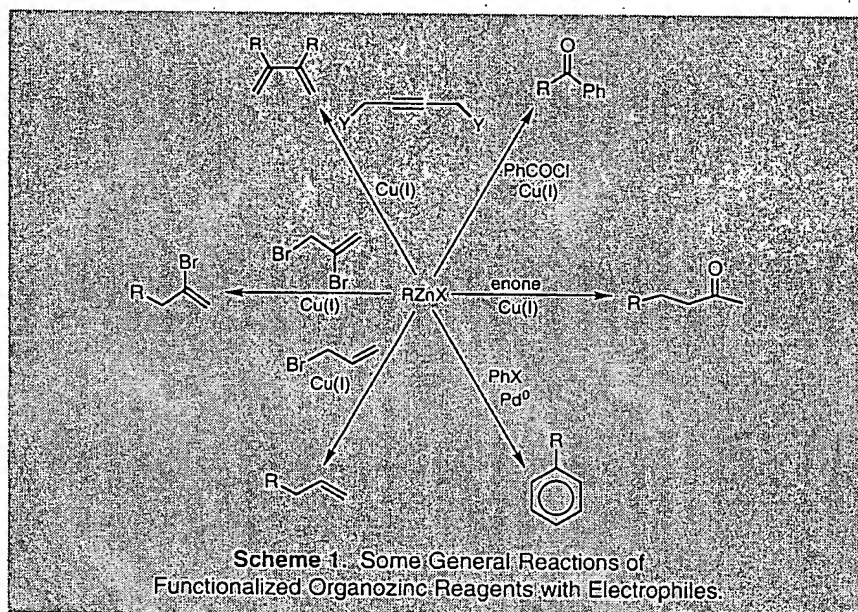
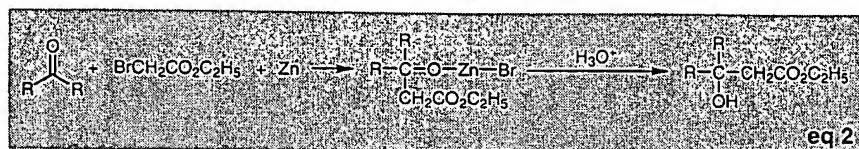
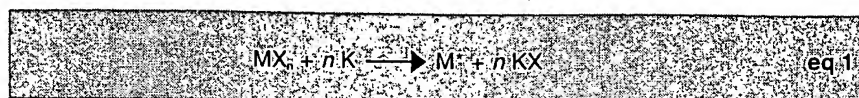
solubility of the metal salts. This approach frequently generates the most active metals, as the relatively short reduction times at low temperatures restrict the sintering (or growth) of the metal particles.

This article will concentrate on two metals prepared by these approaches: zinc and magnesium.

## 2. Rieke<sup>®</sup> Zinc

### 2.1. Direct Oxidative Addition to Functionalized Alkyl and Aryl Halides

Prior to the discovery of Rieke<sup>®</sup> zinc, it was not possible to react alkyl, aryl, and vinyl bromides or chlorides directly with zinc. The one exception was the Reformatsky reaction, which is used to produce  $\beta$ -hydroxy esters (eq 2). The reaction was typically done in refluxing solvent and gave only modest yields. However, using Rieke<sup>®</sup> zinc, it became possible to react ethyl  $\alpha$ -bromoacetate at  $-5^\circ C$  in THF or diethyl ether. Ethyl  $\alpha$ -chloroacetate also reacts, but at a slightly higher temperature ( $10^\circ C$ ). Diethyl ether is the best solvent for these reactions. The activated zinc is prepared



as usual in THF, which is then stripped off and replaced with dry diethyl ether. A one-to-one mixture of aldehyde or ketone and  $\alpha$ -bromo ester is then added at  $-5^\circ\text{C}$ . After stirring for one hour at room temperature, the reaction is followed by the normal workup procedure.<sup>4</sup>

The preparation of organozincs from alkyl, aryl, and vinyl bromides or chlorides was formerly possible only by a metathesis reaction of a zinc halide salt with a preformed organolithium or Grignard reagent. Unfortunately, the organolithium and Grignard reagents have a limited utility, since they are not compatible with many types of functionality. Rieke<sup>®</sup> zinc, on the other hand, will react directly with the bromides or chlorides, and will tolerate a wide variety of

functional groups such as chlorides, nitriles, esters, amides, ethers, sulfides, and ketones. Also of significance, is that aryl halides show no scrambling of position when *ortho*-, *meta*-, or *para*-substituted substrates are used.

The active zinc reacts extremely rapidly with alkyl iodides at room temperature. The reaction times with alkyl bromides at room temperature range from minutes up to several hours. Most aryl iodides react at room temperature, while aryl bromides generally require one or more hours of heating at reflux temperatures. Most alkyl chlorides do not react unless they have an electron-withdrawing group relatively close to the carbon-halogen bond. Aryl chlorides also generally do not react with the active zinc.

The reactions of organozinc reagents with various electrophiles was well developed prior to our work. Now, this chemistry can be extended to functionalized organozinc reagents. Scheme 1 shows some of the general reactions possible. Negishi and King had developed the use of palladium catalysts to cross-couple organozinc reagents,<sup>5</sup> and Knochel and co-workers had developed the use of  $\text{CuCN}\cdot 2\text{LiBr}$  for a number of cross-coupling reactions.<sup>6</sup> We recently demonstrated that  $\text{CuI}\cdot 2\text{LiBr}$  is generally just as effective as copper cyanide.<sup>7</sup>

Organozinc reagents can also be generated from heterocyclic iodides and bromides. The first example, 3-thienylzinc iodide, was prepared by the room temperature oxidative addition of Rieke<sup>®</sup> zinc to 3-iodothiophene to form a thermally stable species (eq 3).<sup>8</sup> This same procedure was used to prepare 3-indolylzinc iodide reagents (eq 4), which could not be synthesized by metathesis of organolithium reagents.<sup>9</sup> Many other types of heterocyclic organozinc reagents are also possible.<sup>10,11</sup>

Remarkably, Rieke<sup>®</sup> zinc reacts rapidly with secondary and tertiary alkyl iodides and bromides. The resulting organozinc halides can be readily used in all of the standard cross-coupling reactions mentioned above.<sup>1</sup> Several examples of reactions with benzoyl chloride are shown in Tables 1–3.<sup>14</sup>

The intermolecular 1,4-addition of alkyl- and arylzinc reagents can be readily carried out with  $\text{CuCN}\cdot 2\text{LiBr}$  or  $\text{CuI}\cdot 2\text{LiBr}$  in moderate to excellent yields. Recently, we reported that secondary and tertiary alkylzinc bromides can, in fact, undergo 1,4-addition without the presence of a copper catalyst.<sup>1</sup> Moreover, the reaction conditions will tolerate a wide range of functional groups. The reaction is performed in a THF/pentane (1:9) solvent with  $\text{BF}_3\cdot\text{Et}_2\text{O}$  and  $\text{TMSCl}$  (eq 5). A few typical examples are shown in Table 4.<sup>14</sup>

Recently, we reported the first electrophilic amination of organozinc halides.<sup>12</sup> This reaction proceeds well with functionalized primary, secondary, and tertiary organozinc bromides. Also, functionalized benzylic zinc bromides, arylzinc halides, and heterocyclic zinc halides work equally well. The reaction (eq 6) involves the addition of the organozinc halide to di-*tert*-butyl azodicarboxylate (DTBAD) (Table 5). Depending on the mode of deprotection, the adducts can be converted into hydrazine derivatives or amines.

The active zinc may also lend itself toward the possibility of forming configurationally stable organometallics. For example, *cis*-4-*tert*-butylcyclohexyl iodide inserted zinc and was quenched with  $\text{D}_2\text{O}$  at low temperature to give the *trans* monodeuterated product (eq 7).<sup>13</sup>

Active zinc is an effective mediator in intramolecular conjugate additions. For example, a spirodecanone was formed from the 1,4-addition of the organozinc reagent, which was readily available from the primary iodide (eq 8).<sup>14</sup> Other types of ring closures also occur (eq 9, 10), and are thought to proceed by a mechanism that does not involve a free radical pathway.

The direct insertion of active zinc into the carbon-iodine bond of 6-iodo-3-functionalized-1-hexenes forms the corresponding primary alkylzinc iodides, which then undergo an intramolecular insertion of the olefinic  $\pi$ -bond into the zinc-carbon bond to form methyl cyclopentanes (eq 11, 12).<sup>15</sup> When R is methyl, the product diastereomeric ratio is high. This is a significant finding in that this step is a regiospecific 5-*Exo-Trig* cyclization, which can occur in the presence of functional groups. The cyclization produces an intermediate that can be elaborated further with various electrophiles. This methodology has been extended to  $\omega$ -alkenyl-*sec*-alkylzinc reagents (Scheme 2).<sup>16</sup>

The reaction of aryl- and alkylzinc halides with allylic halides in the presence of  $\text{CuI} \cdot 2\text{LiBr}$  proceeds cleanly by  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2'$  substitution. The yields are generally in the neighborhood of 90%. The  $\text{S}_{\text{N}}2'/\text{S}_{\text{N}}2$  ratio is generally 95:5 or higher.<sup>17-19</sup> Following Negishi's procedure,<sup>5</sup> the cross-coupling of aryl- and alkylzinc halides with aryl or vinyl iodides or bromides using a palladium catalyst proceeds in excellent yields (Table 6).<sup>19</sup>

## 2.2. Structure-Reactivity of Rieke® Zinc

The reaction of organic halides with magnesium or lithium in the zerovalent state is the most direct and commonly used method to prepare organometallic compounds containing these metals. However, these reactions do not show much structure selectivity, and have been referred to as "among the least selective of organic reactions". We have recently demonstrated that competitive kinetic studies can be accurately carried out with Rieke® zinc.<sup>20,21</sup> Surprisingly, the highly reactive zinc shows remarkable selectivity. For example, a tertiary alkyl bromide is almost thirty times more reactive than a primary alkyl bromide. The relative reactivities of alkyl, aryl, vinyl, benzylic, and allylic bromides represent a range of over six powers of ten. Accordingly, one can accurately predict which bromide will react selectively in di- or polybrominated compounds. A simple example is shown in Scheme 3.<sup>21</sup>

Table 1. Tertiary Alkylzinc Bromides


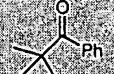



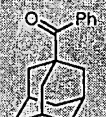
Bromide	PhCOCl (equiv)	Product	Yield (%)
	0.7		75
	0.7		86
	0.7		72

Table 2. Secondary Alkylzinc Bromides


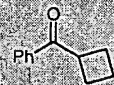

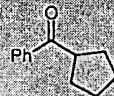
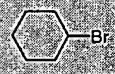
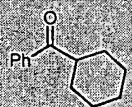

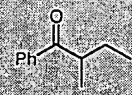
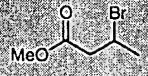
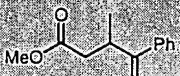
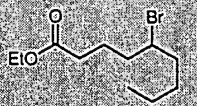
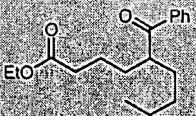


Bromide	PhCOCl (equiv)	Product	Yield (%)
	0.7		75
	0.9		84
	0.7		99
	1.0		95

Table 3. Functionalized Secondary Alkylzinc Bromides

Bromide	PhCOCl (equiv)	Product	Yield (%)
	0.7		75
	0.7		54
	0.7		60



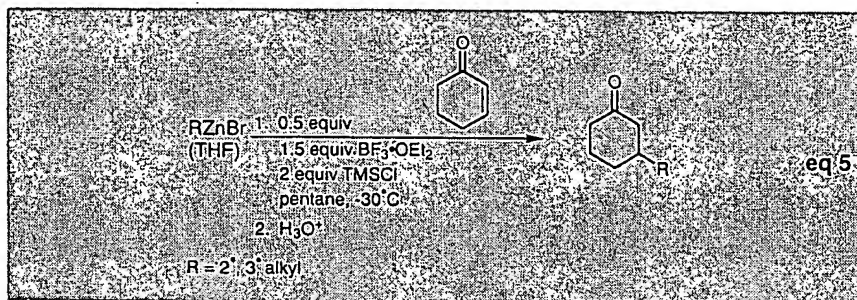

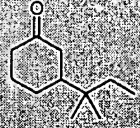

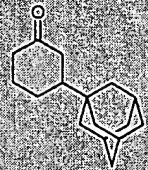
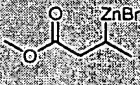
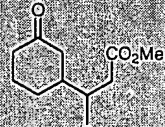

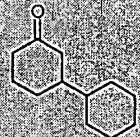
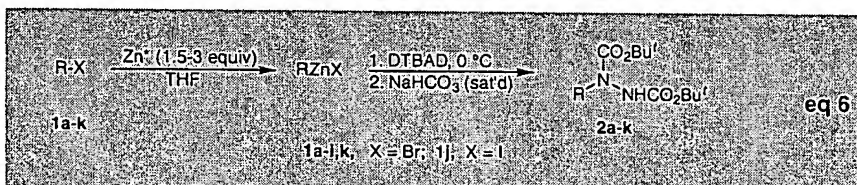


Table 4. 1,4-Addition of Secondary and Tertiary Alkylzinc Bromides to Cyclohexenone without a Copper Catalyst

RZnBr	Product	Yield (%)
		74
		54
		51
		73



### 3. Synthesis of Specialized Polymers and New Materials via Rieke® Metals

#### 3.1. Formation of Polyarylenes Mediated by Rieke® Zinc

Polyarylenes, such as poly(*para*-phenylenes) (PPP) and polythiophenes (PTh), are a class of conjugated polymers with electrical conductivity and other interesting physical properties.<sup>22</sup> The synthetic methodology for the formation of polyarylenes includes electrochemical polymerization of aromatic compounds,

oxidative polymerization of benzene or thiophene with an oxidant such as FeCl<sub>3</sub>, and catalytic cross-coupling polymerization of Grignard reagents. A facile synthesis of polyarylenes was recently achieved in our laboratories by utilizing Rieke® zinc (Zn\*).<sup>23</sup> Rieke® zinc was found to react chemoselectively with dihaloarenes to yield monoorganozinc arenes quantitatively (Scheme 4). Significantly, no bis(halo-zincio)arene was formed. The organozinc intermediate was polymerized by addition of a catalytic amount of Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (0.2 mol %) to give a quantitative yield of the polyarylene (PPP or PTh). The method has been extended

to synthesize a series of polymeric 3-substituted thiophenes such as poly(3-methylthiophene), poly(3-phenylthiophene), and poly(3-cyclopentylthiophene) (Scheme 5). The advantages of this method for the synthesis of polyarylenes include the quantitative selectivity of Zn\* for dihaloarenes, the use of only a very small amount of catalyst (which makes the separation of the polymer easier), mild reaction conditions, and high yields of the resulting polymers.

#### 3.2. Regiocontrolled Synthesis of Poly(3-alkylthiophenes) and Related Polymers Mediated by Rieke® Zinc

Regioregular head-to-tail (HT) poly(3-alkylthiophenes) (P3ATs) are one of the most highly conducting groups of polymers, and have recently been synthesized in our laboratories<sup>24</sup> and elsewhere.<sup>25</sup> Our synthesis involves a catalytic cross-coupling polymerization of a 2-bromo-5-(bromo-zincio)-3-alkylthiophene (4), which is generated by the regioselective oxidative addition of Zn\* to 2,5-dibromo-3-alkylthiophene (3) (Scheme 6). The synthesis has been extended to a fully regiocontrolled synthesis, mediated by Rieke® zinc, of a series of poly(3-alkylthiophenes) with different percentages of head-to-tail linkages in the polymer chain.<sup>26</sup> The organozinc intermediate 4 is polymerized, either by Ni(DPPE)Cl<sub>2</sub> to afford a completely regioregular HT P3AT (5), or by Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> to afford a totally regiorandom HT-HH P3AT (6). The regioregular HT P3AT has a longer electronic absorption wavelength,<sup>27</sup> a smaller band gap (1.7 eV), and a much higher iodine-doped film electrical conductivity (~10<sup>3</sup> S•cm<sup>-1</sup>) than those of the regiorandom P3AT (band gap: 2.1 eV, iodine-doped film conductivity: ~5 S•cm<sup>-1</sup>). The cast film of regioregular P3AT is a flexible, crystalline, self-ordered, bronze-colored film with a metallic luster, whereas that of the regiorandom polymer is an amorphous, orange, transparent film.

Scheme 7 depicts a novel, regiocontrolled synthesis of poly(3-alkylthio-thiophenes) using Rieke® zinc.<sup>28</sup> This synthesis is one of very few examples of a regiospecific synthesis for this class of polymers.

#### 4. Rieke® Magnesium

Perhaps the most widely known and used organometallic reagent is the Grignard reagent. Although commonly thought to be completely general, there are many organic halides that do not form Grignard reagents with ordinary magnesium turnings. The use of Rieke® magnesium dramatically increases

the range of Grignard reagents that are possible.<sup>28-30</sup> Also, in many cases, it allows Grignard formation to occur at a lower temperature, thus avoiding decomposition or unwanted additions.<sup>31</sup> The high reactivity of Rieke® magnesium is demonstrated by its reaction with bromobenzene in a few minutes at -78 °C.<sup>32</sup> Chlorobenzene reacts even at 0 °C. Most dramatic is the ability to generate the Grignard reagent from fluorobenzene. Rieke® magnesium can be used successfully with other halides, which fail to react or give poor yields with standard turnings, including aryl halides containing ether groups and many types of heterocyclic halides. The advantages of low-temperature Grignard preparation include many benzylic systems, which tend to yield homocoupled products at room temperature or above. Another simple example involves 1-bromo-3-phenoxypropane. Although the Grignard reagent is easy to generate at room temperature, it eliminates the phenoxy group by an S<sub>N</sub>2 reaction to generate cyclopropane. This reaction is, in fact, a standard way to prepare cyclopropane as the cyclization cannot be stopped. However, by using the highly reactive magnesium, the Grignard can be prepared at -78 °C, where it does not cyclize and can be reacted with a wide range of electrophiles.

The highly reactive magnesium can be used to prepare di-Grignard reagents from dihalides. As with zinc, the reactive magnesium demonstrates unusual selectivity and can be used to cleanly prepare mono-Grignard reagents from dihalides under the proper conditions. This is in sharp contrast to ordinary turnings, which, for most dihalides, give a mixture of mono-Grignard, di-Grignard, and unreacted dihalide.<sup>30,33</sup>

Recent studies have demonstrated that Rieke® magnesium will readily form substituted (2-butene-1,4-diyl)magnesium complexes from a wide range of substituted 1,3-butadienes.<sup>34</sup> These complexes,<sup>35-39</sup> as well as the corresponding calcium, barium, and strontium complexes,<sup>40,41</sup> react with a wide range of electrophiles to produce complex acyclic, cyclic, and spirohydrocarbons in high yields. The mode of addition depends on whether the electrophile is soft or hard, as illustrated in Schemes 8 and 9.

## 5. Summary

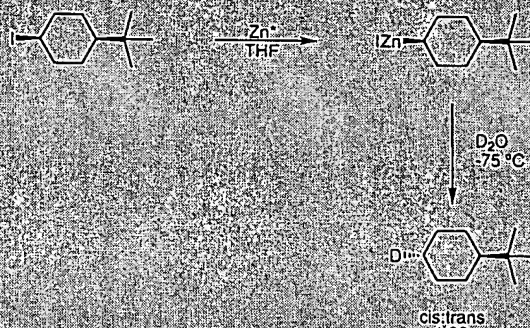
With the advent of highly reactive zinc and magnesium, a number of novel organometallic reagents have been prepared. These reagents allow the facile construction of complex and highly functionalized molecules. The convenient availability of these metals and many organometallic reagents sets the stage

Table 5: The Amination of Organozinc Halides<sup>a,b</sup>

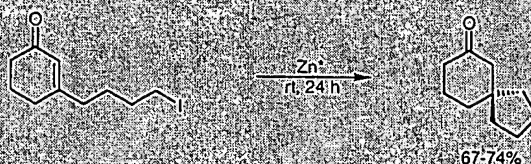
	Starting Halide	Zn <sup>2+</sup> :1	Product NMR/Isolated Yield
1a		2:1	2a, 94/94
1b		2:1	2b, 95/90
1c		2:1	2c, 90/90
1d		2:1	2d, 94/90
1e		2:1	2e, 90/81
1f		2:1	2f, 73/75
1g		1.5:1	2g, 80/80
1h		3:1	2h, 74/40
1i		3:1	2i, 65/66
1j		3:1	2j, 55/-
1k		1.5:1	2k, 90/90

<sup>a</sup> Reaction temperature: 25 °C (1a-g,j,k); 70 °C (1h,i)

<sup>b</sup> Reaction time: 3 h (1a-c,e,f,h-l); 1 h (1d); 0.5 h (1g,k)

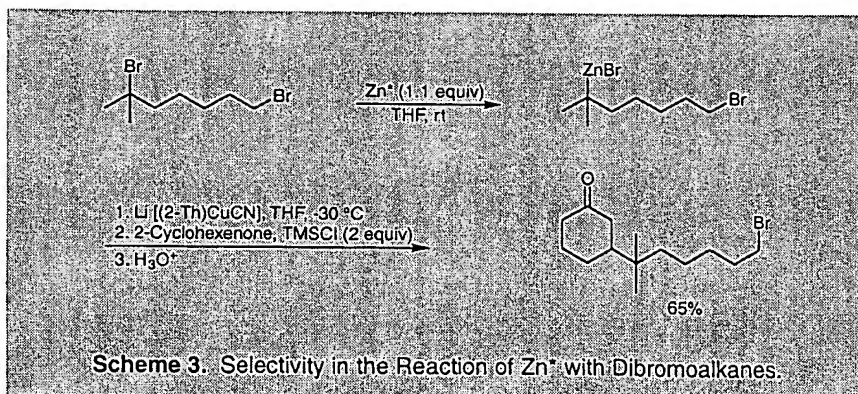
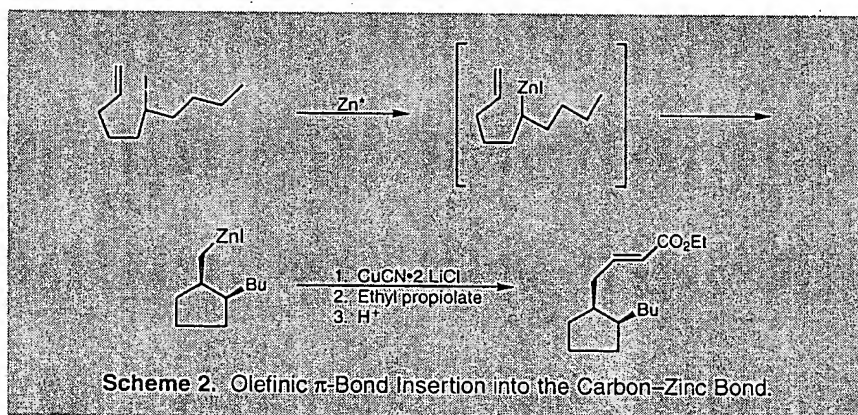
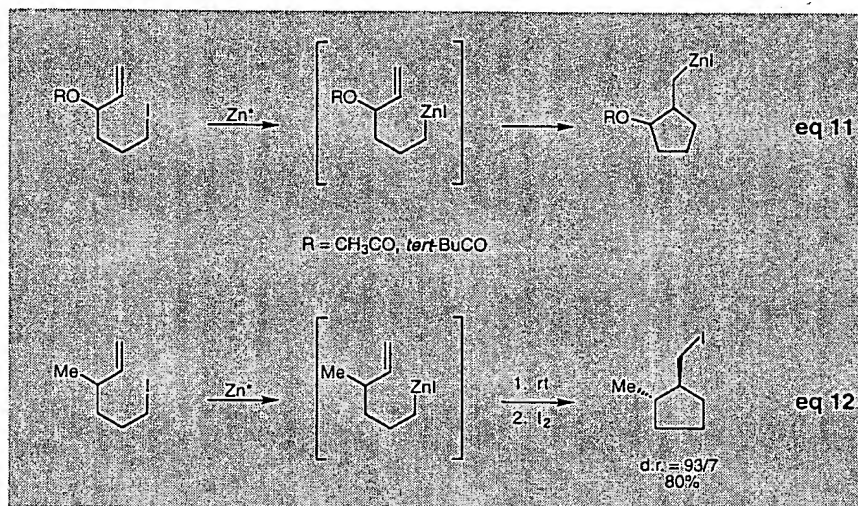
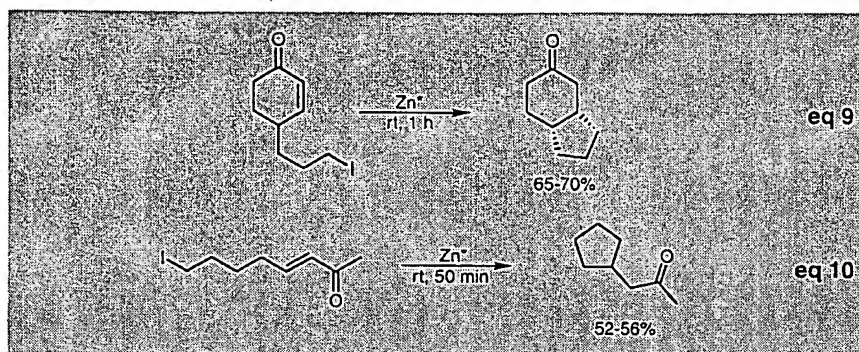


eq 7



eq 8





for further advances in both zinc and magnesium chemistry.

## 6. References and Notes

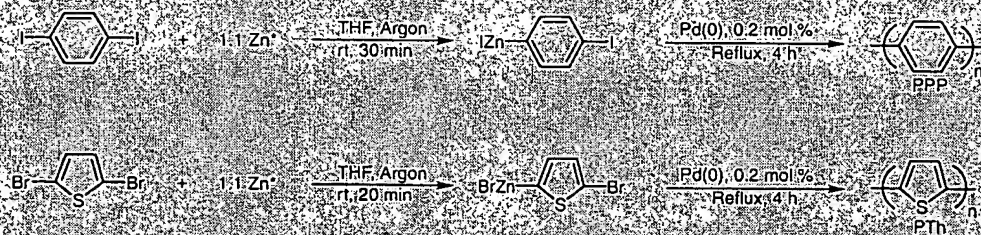
- (†) This account is based partially on the review cited in reference 1(d).
- (1) (a) Rieke, R. D. *Science* 1989, 246, 1260. (b) Rieke, R. D. *Top. Curr. Chem.* 1975, 59, 1. (c) Rieke, R. D. *Acc. Chem. Res.* 1977, 10, 301. (d) Rieke, R. D.; Hanson, M. V. *Tetrahedron* 1997, 53, 1925. (e) Rieke, R. D.; Hudnall, P. M. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1972, 94, 7178.
- (2) (a) Csuk, R.; Glanzer, B. L.; Furstner, A. *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* 1988, 28, 85. (b) Savoia, D.; Trombini, C.; Umani-Ronchi, A. *Pure Appl. Chem.* 1985, 57, 1887. (c) Bogdanovic, B. *Acc. Chem. Res.* 1988, 21, 261. (d) Marceau, P.; Gautreau, L.; Beguin, F. *J. Organomet. Chem.* 1991, 403, 21. (e) Tsai, K.-L.; Dye, J. L. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1991, 113, 1650.
- (3) Rieke, R. D.; Ofele, K.; Fischer, E. O. *J. Organomet. Chem.* 1974, 76, C19.
- (4) Rieke, R. D.; Uhm, S. J. *Synthesis* 1975, 452.
- (5) Negishi, E.; King, A. O.; Okukado, N. *J. Org. Chem.* 1977, 42, 1821.
- (6) Knochel, P.; Singer, R. D. *Chem. Rev.* 1993, 93, 2117.
- (7) The use of CuI is patented by Rieke Metals, Inc.
- (8) Wu, X.; Rieke, R. D. *J. Org. Chem.* 1995, 60, 6658.
- (9) Sakamoto, T.; Kondo, Y.; Takazawa, N.; Yamanaka, H. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1993, 34, 5955.
- (10) Sakamoto, T.; Kondo, Y.; Murata, N.; Yamanaka, H. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1992, 33, 5373.
- (11) Sakamoto, T.; Kondo, Y.; Murata, N.; Yamanaka, H. *Tetrahedron* 1993, 49, 9713.
- (12) Velarde-Ortiz, R.; Guijarro, A.; Rieke, R. D. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1998, 39, 9157.
- (13) Duddu, R.; Eckhardt, M.; Furlong, M.; Knoess, H. P.; Berger, S.; Knochel, P. *Tetrahedron* 1994, 50, 2415.
- (14) Bronk, B. S.; Lippard, S. J.; Danheiser, R. L. *Organometallics* 1993, 12, 3340.
- (15) Meyer, C.; Marek, I.; Courtemanche, G.; Normant, J.-F. *Synlett* 1993, 266.
- (16) Meyer, C.; Marek, I.; Courtemanche, G.; Normant, J.-F. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1993, 34, 6053.
- (17) Zhu, L.; Rieke, R. D. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1991, 32, 2865.
- (18) Zhu, L.; Shaughnessy, K. H.; Rieke, R. D. *Synth. Commun.* 1993, 23, 525.
- (19) Zhu, L.; Wehmeyer, R. M.; Rieke, R. D. *J. Org. Chem.* 1991, 56, 1445.
- (20) Guijarro, A.; Rieke, R. D. *Angew. Chem., Int. Ed. Engl.* 1998, 37, 1679.
- (21) Guijarro, A.; Rosenberg, D. M.; Rieke, R. D. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1999, 121, 4155.
- (22) (a) *Handbook of Conducting Polymers*; Skotheim, T. A., Ed.; Marcel Dekker: New York, 1986. (b) Kanatzidis, M. G. *Chem. Eng. News* 1990, (December 3), 36. (c) Kovacic, P.; Jones, M. B. *Chem. Rev.* 1987, 87, 357.

Table 6. Coupling Reactions of RZnX with Aryl and Vinyl Halides Catalyzed by Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub>.

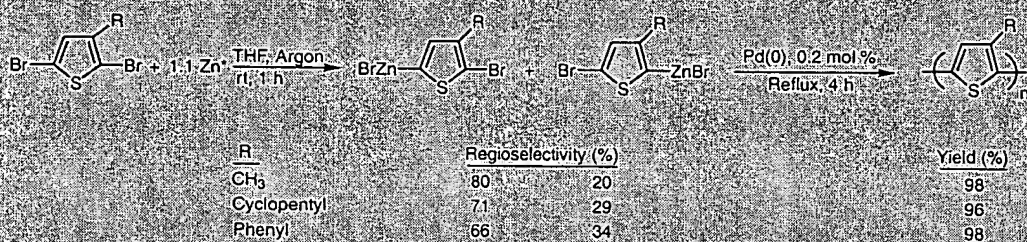
$\text{RZnX} + \text{R}'\text{Y} \xrightarrow[\text{THF}]{5 \text{ mol \% Pd(PPh}_3)_4} \text{RR}'$				
Entry	RZnX	R'Y	Product	Yield (%) <sup>a</sup>
1	$\text{EtO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{ZnBr}$	$p\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{COCH}_3$		86
2	$\text{EtO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{ZnBr}$	$p\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CN}$		93
3	$\text{EtO}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{ZnBr}$	$p\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{NO}_2$		90
4		$p\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CN}$		80
5		$p\text{-IC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{Et}$		94
6		$p\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CN}$		82
7		$p\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CN}$		95
8		$p\text{-IC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{Et}$		82
9		$m\text{-BrC}_6\text{H}_4\text{CO}_2\text{Et}$		93
10 11		$\text{R}'\text{-CH=CH-Br}$		R' = H, 85 R' = CH <sub>3</sub> , 86
12 13		$\text{R}'\text{-CH=CH-Br}$		R' = H, 95 R' = CH <sub>3</sub> , 93

<sup>a</sup> Isolated yields.

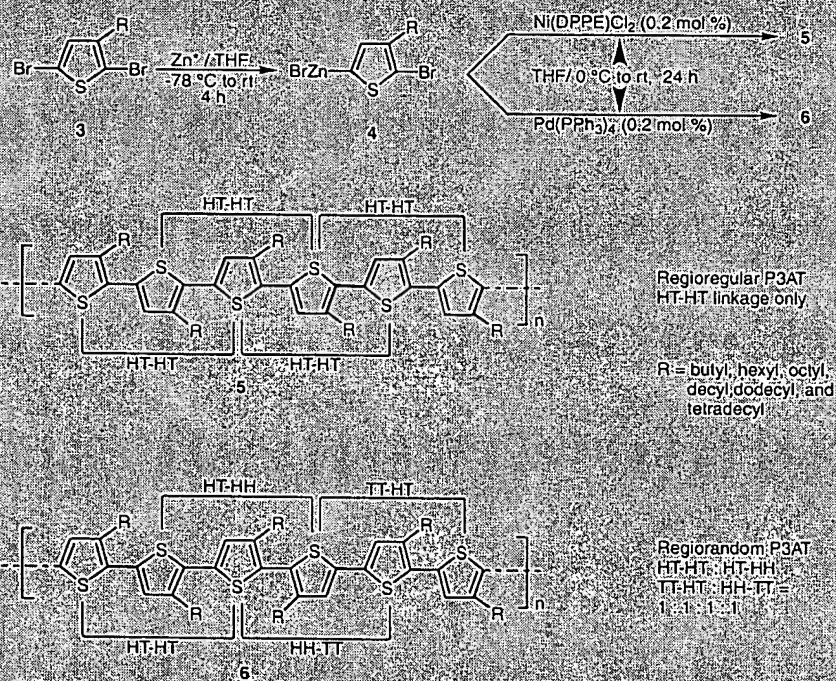




Scheme 4. Rieke® Zinc Mediated Synthesis of Polyarylenes.

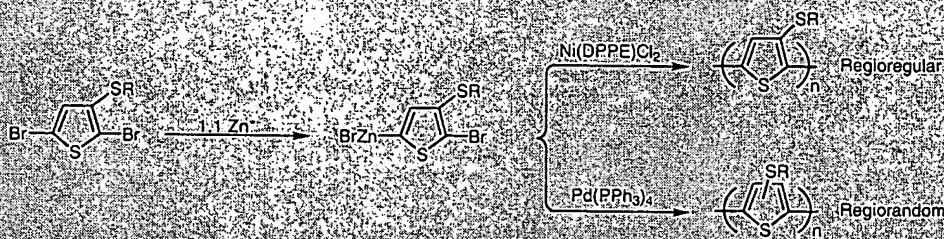


Scheme 5. Synthesis of Poly(3-substituted thiophenes) Mediated by Rieke® Zinc.

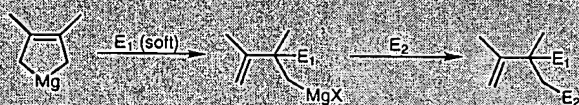


Scheme 6. Regiocontrolled Synthesis of Poly(3-alkylthiophenes) Mediated by Rieke® Zinc.

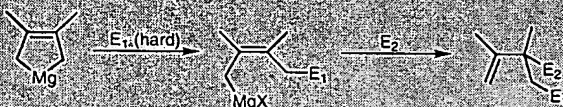




Scheme 7: Regiocontrolled Synthesis of Poly(3-alkylthio-thiophenes) Mediated by Zn\*



Scheme 8: Reaction of a Soft Electrophile with (2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene-1,4-diyl)magnesium.



Scheme 9: Reaction of a Hard Electrophile with (2,3-Dimethyl-2-butene-1,4-diyl)magnesium.

- (23) Chen, T.-A.; O'Brien, R. A.; Rieke, R. D. *Macromolecules* 1993, 26, 3462.
- (24) (a) Chen, T.-A.; Rieke, R. D. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1992, 114, 10087. (b) Chen, T.-A.; Rieke, R. D. *Synth. Met.* 1993, 60, 175. (c) Chen, T.-A.; Rieke, R. D. *Polym. Prepr.* 1993, 34, 426.
- (25) McCullough, R. D.; Lowe, R. D.; Jayaraman, M.; Anderson, D. L. *J. Org. Chem.* 1993, 58, 904.
- (26) (a) Chen, T.-A.; Wu, X.; Rieke, R. D. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1995, 117, 233. (b) Wu, X.; Chen, T. A.; Rieke, R. D. *Macromolecules* 1995, 28, 2101.
- (27) Sandman, D. J. *Trends Polym. Sci.* 1994, 2, 44.
- (28) Lee, J. S.; Velarde-Ortiz, R.; Guijarro, A.; Wurst, J. R.; Rieke, R. D. *J. Org. Chem.* 2000, 65, in press.
- (29) Rieke, R. D.; Bales, S. E. *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1973, 879.
- (30) Rieke, R. D.; Bales, S. E. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1974, 96, 1775.
- (31) Burns, T. P.; Rieke, R. D. *J. Org. Chem.* 1987, 52, 3674.
- (32) Rieke, R. D.; Li, P. T.-J.; Burns, T. P.; Uhm, S. T. *J. Org. Chem.* 1981, 46, 4323.
- (33) Sell, M. S.; Hanson, M. V.; Rieke, R. D. *Synth. Commun.* 1994, 24, 2379.
- (34) Xiong, H.; Rieke, R. D. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1992, 114, 4415.

- (35) Sell, M. S.; Klein, W. R.; Rieke, R. D. *J. Org. Chem.* 1995, 60, 1077.
- (36) Rieke, R. D.; Sell, M. S.; Xiong, H. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1995, 117, 5429.
- (37) (a) Xiong, H.; Rieke, R. D. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1991, 32, 5269. (b) Rieke, R. D.; Xiong, H. *J. Org. Chem.* 1992, 57, 6560.
- (38) (a) Sell, M. S.; Xiong, H.; Rieke, R. D. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1993, 34, 6007. (b) Rieke, R. D.; Sell, M. S.; Xiong, H. *J. Org. Chem.* 1995, 60, 5143.
- (39) Xiong, H.; Rieke, R. D. *J. Org. Chem.* 1992, 57, 7007.
- (40) Wu, T.-C.; Xiong, H.; Rieke, R. D. *J. Org. Chem.* 1990, 55, 5045.
- (41) Sell, M. S.; Rieke, R. D. *Synth. Commun.* 1995, 25, 4107.

Rieke is a registered trademark of Rieke Metals, Inc.

### About the Author

Reuben D. Rieke grew up in Fairfax, Minnesota. He received a Bachelor of Chemistry degree from the University of Minnesota-Minneapolis, doing undergraduate research with Professor Wayland E. Noland. He received a Ph.D. from the University of Wisconsin-Madison in 1966 under the direction of Professor Howard E.

Zimmerman. He then did postgraduate work with Professor Saul Winstein at UCLA. He taught at the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill from 1966 to 1976, and at North Dakota State University in Fargo from 1976 to 1977. He is currently Howard S. Wilson Professor of Chemistry at the University of Nebraska-Lincoln. His present research interests include the development and utilization of novel organometallic reagents derived from highly reactive metals. He is also interested in the synthesis of novel polymers using highly reactive metals. In 1991, Dr. Rieke and his wife, Loretta, founded Rieke Metals, Inc.



### ALDRICH MINI GAS BUBBLER

For bubble counting.

Maximum volume is 4mL.

Z22,371-9

